



Universiteit Gent  
Faculteit Wetenschappen  
Vakgroep Fysica en Sterrenkunde

<sup>2</sup> No title yet

<sup>3</sup> No sub-title neither, obviously...

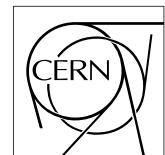
---

<sup>4</sup> Alexis Fagot

5



Thesis to obtain the degree of  
Doctor of Philosophy in Physics  
Academic years 2012-2017







Universiteit Gent  
Faculteit Wetenschappen  
Vakgroep Fysica en Sterrenkunde

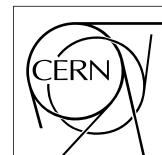
Promotoren: Dr. Michael Tytgat  
Prof. Dr. Dirk Ryckbosch

Universiteit Gent  
Faculteit Wetenschappen  
Vakgroep Fysica en Sterrenkunde  
Proeftuinstraat 86, B-9000 Gent, België  
Tel.: +32 9 264.65.28  
Fax.: +32 9 264.66.97

17



Thesis to obtain the degree of  
Doctor of Philosophy in Physics  
Academic years 2012-2017





## Acknowledgements

<sup>19</sup> Ici on remerciera tous les gens que j'ai pu croiser durant cette aventure et qui m'ont permis de passer  
<sup>20</sup> un bon moment

<sup>21</sup> *Gent, ici la super date de la mort qui tue de la fin d'écriture*  
<sup>22</sup> *Alexis Fagot*



# Table of Contents

23

24	<b>Acknowledgements</b>	i
25	<b>Nederlandse samenvatting</b>	vii
26	<b>English summary</b>	ix
27	<b>1 Introduction</b>	1-1
28	1.1 A story of High Energy Physics . . . . .	1-1
29	1.2 Organisation of this study . . . . .	1-1
30	<b>2 Investigating the TeV scale</b>	2-1
31	2.1 The Standard Model of Particle Physics . . . . .	2-2
32	2.1.1 A history of particle physics . . . . .	2-2
33	2.1.2 Construction and test of the model . . . . .	2-11
34	2.1.3 Investigating the TeV scale . . . . .	2-12
35	2.2 The Large Hadron Collider & the Compact Muon Solenoid . . . . .	2-14
36	2.2.1 LHC, the most powerful particle accelerator . . . . .	2-14
37	2.2.1.1 Particle acceleration . . . . .	2-15
38	2.2.2 CMS, a multipurpose experiment . . . . .	2-18
39	2.2.2.1 The silicon tracker, core of CMS . . . . .	2-20
40	2.2.2.2 The calorimeters, measurement of particle's energy . . . . .	2-20
41	2.2.2.3 The muon system, corner stone of CMS . . . . .	2-22
42	<b>3 Muon Phase-II Upgrade</b>	3-1
43	3.1 High Luminosity LHC and muon system requirements . . . . .	3-2
44	3.2 Necessity for improved electronics . . . . .	3-5
45	3.3 New detectors and increased acceptance . . . . .	3-8
46	3.3.1 Improved forward resistive plate chambers . . . . .	3-9
47	3.3.2 Gas electron multipliers . . . . .	3-12
48	3.3.3 Installation schedule . . . . .	3-19
49	3.4 Implications of the different upgrades on the Level-1 Trigger. Improvement of	
50	physics performance. . . . .	3-20
51	3.5 Ecofriendly gas studies . . . . .	3-24
52	<b>4 Physics of Resistive plate chambers</b>	4-1
53	4.1 Principle . . . . .	4-1
54	4.2 Rate capability and time resolution of Resistive Plate Chambers . . . . .	4-3
55	4.2.1 Operation modes . . . . .	4-3
56	4.2.2 Standard gas mixture for RPCs operated in collider experiments . . . . .	4-5
57	4.2.3 Detector designs and performance . . . . .	4-9
58	4.2.3.1 Double-gap RPC . . . . .	4-10

---

59	4.2.3.2 Multigap RPC (MRPC) . . . . .	4-11
60	4.2.3.3 Charge distribution and performance limitations . . . . .	4-13
61	4.3 Signal formation . . . . .	4-16
62	4.3.1 Electron drift velocity . . . . .	4-16
63	4.4 Gas transport parameters . . . . .	4-16
64	<b>5 Longevity studies and Consolidation of the present CMS RPC subsystem</b>	<b>5-1</b>
65	5.1 Resistive Plate Chambers at CMS . . . . .	5-1
66	5.1.1 Overview . . . . .	5-1
67	5.1.2 The present RPC system . . . . .	5-2
68	5.1.3 Pulse processing of CMS RPCs . . . . .	5-3
69	5.2 Testing detectors under extreme conditions . . . . .	5-4
70	5.2.1 The Gamma Irradiation Facilities . . . . .	5-6
71	5.2.1.1 GIF . . . . .	5-6
72	5.2.1.2 GIF++ . . . . .	5-8
73	5.3 Preliminary tests at GIF . . . . .	5-10
74	5.3.1 Resistive Plate Chamber test setup . . . . .	5-10
75	5.3.2 Data Acquisition . . . . .	5-12
76	5.3.3 Geometrical acceptance of the setup layout to cosmic muons . . . . .	5-12
77	5.3.3.1 Description of the simulation layout . . . . .	5-13
78	5.3.3.2 Simulation procedure . . . . .	5-15
79	5.3.3.3 Results . . . . .	5-16
80	5.3.4 Photon flux at GIF . . . . .	5-16
81	5.3.4.1 Expectations from simulations . . . . .	5-16
82	5.3.4.2 Dose measurements . . . . .	5-21
83	5.3.5 Results and discussions . . . . .	5-22
84	5.4 Longevity tests at GIF++ . . . . .	5-23
85	5.4.1 Description of the Data Acquisition . . . . .	5-26
86	5.4.2 RPC current, environmental and operation parameter monitoring . . . . .	5-27
87	5.4.3 Measurement procedure . . . . .	5-28
88	5.4.4 Longevity studies results . . . . .	5-28
89	<b>6 Investigation on high rate RPCs</b>	<b>6-1</b>
90	6.1 Rate limitations and ageing of RPCs . . . . .	6-1
91	6.1.1 Low resistivity electrodes . . . . .	6-1
92	6.1.2 Low noise front-end electronics . . . . .	6-1
93	6.2 Construction of prototypes . . . . .	6-1
94	6.3 Results and discussions . . . . .	6-1
95	<b>7 Conclusions and outlooks</b>	<b>7-1</b>
96	7.1 Conclusions . . . . .	7-1
97	7.2 Outlooks . . . . .	7-1
98	<b>A A data acquisition software for CAEN VME TDCs</b>	<b>A-1</b>
99	A.1 GIF++ DAQ file tree . . . . .	A-1
100	A.2 Usage of the DAQ . . . . .	A-2
101	A.3 Description of the readout setup . . . . .	A-3
102	A.4 Data read-out . . . . .	A-3
103	A.4.1 V1190A TDCs . . . . .	A-4
104	A.4.2 DataReader . . . . .	A-6

---

105	A.4.3 Data quality flag . . . . .	A-10
106	A.5 Communications . . . . .	A-12
107	A.5.1 V1718 USB Bridge . . . . .	A-13
108	A.5.2 Configuration file . . . . .	A-13
109	A.5.3 WebDCS/DAQ intercommunication . . . . .	A-17
110	A.5.4 Example of inter-process communication cycle . . . . .	A-18
111	A.6 Software export . . . . .	A-18
112	<b>B Details on the offline analysis package</b>	<b>B-1</b>
113	B.1 GIF++ Offline Analysis file tree . . . . .	B-1
114	B.2 Usage of the Offline Analysis . . . . .	B-2
115	B.2.1 Output of the offline tool . . . . .	B-3
116	B.2.1.1 ROOT file . . . . .	B-3
117	B.2.1.2 CSV files . . . . .	B-5
118	B.3 Analysis inputs and information handling . . . . .	B-6
119	B.3.1 Dimensions file and IniFile parser . . . . .	B-6
120	B.3.2 TDC to RPC link file and Mapping . . . . .	B-7
121	B.4 Description of GIF++ setup within the Offline Analysis tool . . . . .	B-9
122	B.4.1 RPC objects . . . . .	B-9
123	B.4.2 Trolley objects . . . . .	B-10
124	B.4.3 Infrastructure object . . . . .	B-11
125	B.5 Handeling of data . . . . .	B-12
126	B.5.1 RPC hits . . . . .	B-13
127	B.5.2 Clusters of hits . . . . .	B-14
128	B.6 DAQ data Analysis . . . . .	B-15
129	B.6.1 Determination of the run type . . . . .	B-16
130	B.6.2 Beam time window calculation for efficiency runs . . . . .	B-17
131	B.6.3 Data loop and histogram filling . . . . .	B-18
132	B.6.4 Results calculation . . . . .	B-19
133	B.6.4.1 Rate normalisation . . . . .	B-19
134	B.6.4.2 Rate and activity . . . . .	B-21
135	B.6.4.3 Strip masking tool . . . . .	B-23
136	B.6.4.4 Output CSV files filling . . . . .	B-25
137	B.7 Current data Analysis . . . . .	B-29



<sup>138</sup>

## Nederlandse samenvatting –Summary in Dutch–

<sup>140</sup> Le resume en Neerlandais (j'aurais peut-être pu apprendre la langue juste pour ça...).

<sup>139</sup>



<sup>141</sup>

## English summary

<sup>142</sup> Le meme résume mais en Anglais (on commencera par la hein!).



# List of Figures

143

144	2.1	Through the gold foil experiment Rutherford could show that most of the mass of atoms was contained in a positively charged nucleus and could then propose a more accurate atomic model than that of Thomson. . . . .	2-3
145	2.2	Figure 2.2a: Meson octet. Figure 2.2b: Baryon octet. Figure 2.2c: Baryon decuplet. .	2-8
146	2.3	The elementary particles of the Standard Model are showed along with their names and properties. Their interactions with the strong, weak and electromagnetic forces have been explicated using color squares. In the left column, the scalar higgs boson is depicted, while the central is focused on the matter particles, the fermions, and the right on the force carriers, the gauge bosons. The role of the Higgs boson in electroweak symmetry breaking is highlighted, and the corresponding way properties of the various particles differ in the (high-energy) symmetric phase (top) and the (low-energy) broken-symmetry phase (bottom) are showed. . . . .	2-11
147	2.4	CERN accelerator complex. . . . .	2-15
148	2.5	Pictures of the different accelerators. From top to bottom: first the LINAC 2 and the <i>Pb</i> source of LINAC 3. Then the Booster and the LEIR. Finally, the PS, the SPS and the LHC. . . . .	2-16
149	2.6	Figure 2.6a: schematics of the LHC cryodipoles. 1: Superconducting Coils, 2: Beam pipe, 3: Heat exchanger Pipe, 4: Helium-II Vessel, 5: Superconducting Bus-bar, 6: Iron Yoke, 7: Non-Magnetic Collars, 8: Vacuum Vessel, 9: Radiation Screen, 10: Thermal Shield, 11: Auxiliary Bus-bar Tube, 12: Instrumentation Feed Throughs, 13: Protection Diode, 14: Quadrupole Bus-bars, 15: Spool Piece Bus-bars. Figure 2.6b: magnetic field and resulting motion force applied on the beam particles. . .	2-17
150	2.7	Figure 2.7a: picture of the LHC quadrupoles. Figure 2.7b: magnetic fields and resulting focussing force applied on the beam by 2 consecutive quadrupoles. . . . .	2-18
151	2.8	Picture of the CMS barrel. The red outer layer is the muon system hosted into the red iron return yokes. The calorimeters are the blue cylinder inside in magnet solenoid and the tracker is the inner yellow cylinder built around the beam pipe. . . . .	2-19
152	2.9	View of the CMS apparatus and of its different components. . . . .	2-19
153	2.10	Slice showing CMS sub-detectors and how particles interact with them. . . . .	2-20
154	2.11	CMS tracker. . . . .	2-20
155	2.12	Figure 2.12a: picture of the ECAL. Figure 2.12b: picture of the lead tungstate crystals composing the ECAL. . . . .	2-21
156	2.13	CMS hadron calorimeter barrel. . . . .	2-21
157	2.14	A quadrant of the muon system, showing DTs (yellow), RPCs (blue), and CSCs (green). . . . .	2-22
158	2.15	Figure 2.15a: Barrel wheel with its detector rings and return yokes. Figure 2.15b: CSC endcap disk with the 2 CSC stations. The outer station is made of 10 deg detectors while the inner station is made of 20 deg detectors. Figure 2.15c: RPC endcap disk. The inner station is not equipped and the inner CSC station can be seen.	2-23
159			
160			
161			
162			
163			
164			
165			
166			
167			
168			
169			
170			
171			
172			
173			
174			
175			
176			
177			
178			
179			
180			
181			
182			

- 183    2.16 Figure 2.16a: Cross section of a DT module showing the two superlayers measur-  
 184    ing the  $\phi$  coordinate, perpendicular to the cross section plane, and the superlayer  
 185    measuring the  $\eta$  coordinate, placed in between the two others with honeycomb and  
 186    parallel to the cross section plane. The DT detector is sandwiched in between 2  
 187    RPCs whose readout strips are perpendicular to the cross section plane, measuring  
 188    the  $\phi$  coordinate. Figure 2.16b: A DT cell is shown together with its electric field.  
 189    The path of a muon through a superlayer is shown. . . . . 2-23
- 190    2.17 Figure 2.17a: cathode strips and anode wire layout of a CSC panel. Figure 2.17b  
 191    avalanche development and charge collection by anode wires and induction on cath-  
 192    ode strips inside of a CSC panel. . . . . 2-24
- 193    2.18 Muon track reconstruction through the 6 panels of a CMS CSC using the infor-  
 194    mation of anode wire groups and cathode strip charge distribution combined with  
 195    comparator bits to decide on which half strip the muon is more likely to have passed. 2-24
- 196    2.19 Double gap layout of CMS RPCs. Muons passing through the gas volumes will cre-  
 197    ate electron-ions pairs by ionising the gas. this ionisation will immediately translate  
 198    into a developing avalanche. . . . . 2-25
- 199    3.1 Detailed timeline projection of for LHC and HL-LHC operation until 2039 show-  
 200    ing the evolution of the instantaneous and integrated luminosity as designed (Fig-  
 201    ure 3.1a) and in the ultimate case where the instantaneous luminosity is increased to  
 202     $7.5 \times 10^{34} \text{ cm}^{-2}\text{s}^{-1}$  (Figure 3.1b) [20, 22]. . . . . 3-2
- 203    3.2 Absorbed dose in the CMS cavern after an integrated luminosity of 3000 fb. Using  
 204    the interaction point as reference, R is the transverse distance from the beamline and  
 205    Z is the distance along the beamline. . . . . 3-3
- 206    3.3 A quadrant of the muon system, showing DTs (yellow), RPCs (blue), and CSCs  
 207    (green). The locations of new forward muon detectors for Phase-II are contained  
 208    within the dashed box and indicated in red for GEM stations (ME0, GE1/1, and  
 209    GE2/1) and dark blue for improved RPC (iRPC) stations (RE3/1 and RE4/1). . . . . 3-4
- 210    3.4 Figure 3.4a: Extrapolated fraction of failing channels of the present DT MiC1 elec-  
 211    tronics as a function of the integrated luminosity for different scenari until LS4. Fig-  
 212    ure 3.4b: Comparison of the current (left) and upgraded (right) DT data processing.  
 213    So far, the data is sent to service cavern of CMS facility via copper-to-optical-fiber  
 214    translators (CuOF) by each MiC1. There, data including RPCs and outer hadron  
 215    calorimeter is combined into trigger primitives (TPG) and transmitted by the Twin-  
 216    Mux system to CMS Track Finder. The time-to-digital converter (TDC) data is col-  
 217    lected and sent to the CMS data acquisition system (DAQ) by the micro read-out  
 218    server ( $\mu$ ROS). After the upgrade, the TDC data will be sent via optical links to  
 219    a patch panel inside the experimental cavern by each MiC2, and transferred to the  
 220    back-end, where triggering and event building will be performed. . . . . 3-6
- 221    3.5 Figure 3.5a: The event loss fractions as a function of the instantaneous luminosity is  
 222    compared for CFEBs (Phase-1) and DCFEBs (Phase-II) at different CSC locations.  
 223    HL-LHC luminosity is marked with the dashed brown line. Figure 3.5b: Comparison  
 224    of the current (left) and upgraded (right) CSC data processing. A part of the con-  
 225    nections in between ALCTs and DCFEBs, and the trigger mother boards (TMBs)  
 226    and data acquisition mother boards (DMBs) will be upgraded toward optical data  
 227    transfer. The detector dependent units (DDUs) used as interface in between CSCs'  
 228    front-end electronics and the CMS DAQ will be replaced by new FED boards. . . . . 3-7
- 229    3.6 Comparison of the simulated time residuals in between reconstructed and true muon  
 230    times without (blue) and with (red) the upgraded RPC link system. . . . . 3-8

231	3.7	RMS of the multiple scattering displacement as a function of muon $p_T$ for the proposed forward muon stations. All of the electromagnetic processes such as bremsstrahlung and magnetic field effect are included in the simulation. . . . .	3-9
234	3.8	Simulation of the impact of RPC hit inclusion onto the local trigger primitive efficiency in station 3 (left) and station 4 (right). The contribution of iRPC starts above $ \eta  = 1.8$ . . . . .	3-9
237	3.9	Expected hit rate due to neutrons, photons, electrons and positrons at HL-HLC instantaneous luminosity of $5 \times 10^{34} \text{ cm}^{-2}\text{s}^{-1}$ in RE3/1 and RE4/1 chambers. The sensitivities of iRPCs used in the simulation for each particle are reported and differ from one endcap disk to another as the energies of the considered particles varies with the increasing distance from the interaction point. . . . .	3-10
242	3.10	Measured average charge per avalanche as a function of the effective electric field for different gas gap thickness in double gap RPCs using HPL electrodes. . . . .	3-11
244	3.11	The PETIROC time jitter as a function of the input signal amplitude, measured with and without internal clocks. . . . .	3-12
246	3.12	Schematics of a GEM showing the cathode on top, the GEM foil separating the gas volume into the drift region, in between the cathode and foil, and the induction region, in between the GEM foil and the anode, and the anode on which a 2D readout is installed. A negative voltage is applied on the cathode while the anode is connected to the ground. . . . .	3-13
251	3.13	Left: Picture of a CMS GEM foil provided by a scanning electron microscope. Right: Representation of the electric field lines in a GEM hole and of the amplification that electrons and ions undergo in the hole's volume due to the very intense electric field. . . . .	3-14
254	3.14	Schematic representation of CMS triple GEMs. The gas volume is divided into 4 areas. The drift area is the region where the primary electrons are created before being amplified a first time while passing through the first GEM foil. Then the process of drift and amplification is repeated twice in following two transfer areas and GEM foils. Finally, the charges have been amplified enough to induce current in the read-out strips while in the last drift area. The dimensions, potentials and electric fields are provided. . . . .	3-14
261	3.15	Simulated efficiency and rate of the standalone Level-1 muon trigger using tracks reconstructed in CSCs and all GEM stations compared with Phase-I values in the case where only CSCs are used or CSCs+GE1/1. The zones of inefficiency of the CSC subsystem are compensated by the addition of GEMs during Phase-II and the trigger rates is kept from increasing due to the high luminosity. . . . .	3-15
266	3.16	Figure 3.16a: Simulated resolution of the muon direction measurement $\Delta\phi$ with Phase-II conditions. In the second endcap station, the resolution is compared in the case of CSCs (ME2/1) alone and CSCs+GEMs (GE2/1+ME2/1) while a similar resolution measurement is given in the case of the first station (GE1/1+ME1/1). Figure 3.16b: The addition of GEM detectors on stations 1 and 2 (ME0 is considered to contribute to station station 1) as redundant system to CSCs allows to improve the muon momentum improvement through a more accurate measurement of the local bending angles $\phi_1$ and $\phi_2$ . . . . .	3-16
274	3.17	Schematics of the data communication chain for DAQ of the GEM subsystems. The sending of trigger data via optical links to the CSC OTMBs is only done for GE1/1 and GE2/1 to match the data with ME1/1 and ME2/1. . . . .	3-16

277 3.18 Figure 3.18a: Energy spectrum of GIF++  $^{137}Cs$  source as measured by the GE1/1  
 278 detector installed in GIF++. Figure 3.18b: Evolution of the normalized gain of the  
 279 GE1/1 detector installed at in GIF++ as a function of the integrated charge per unit  
 280 area. The first part of the study, up to a charge of  $55\text{ mC/cm}^2$  had been done in the  
 281 former Gamma Irradiation Facility (GIF) that has now been dismantled following  
 282 the construction of GIF++. No variation of the normalized gain can be observed  
 283 after an accumulation of  $110\text{ mC/cm}^2$  . . . . . 3-17

284 3.19 Figure 3.19a: Comparison of the gas gain as a function of the divider voltage before  
 285 and after the irradiation of a triple-GEM by neutrons in CHARM. Figure 3.19b:  
 286 Comparison of the gas gain as a function of the divider voltage before and after the  
 287 irradiation of a triple-GEM by alpha particles. . . . . 3-18

288 3.20 Data flow of the Level-1 Trigger during Phase-II operations. . . . . 3-20

289 3.21 Comparison of Phase-II DT trigger primitives algorithmic efficiency for segments  
 290 obtained with 2 super-layers (quality  $\geq 6/8$ ) and 1 super-layer only (quality = 4/4).  
 291 The simulation was done by generating  $2 \times 10^6$  muons. The candidate tracks with  
 292 correct time identification is showed with open symbols. . . . . 3-21

293 3.22 Simulated spatial (3.22a) and angular (3.22b) resolution of the algorithm using 8  
 294 aligned hits in both super-layers (quality = 8/8) and 4 aligned hits in only one super-  
 295 layer (quality = 4/4). The contribution of intermediate quality tracks (6 aligned hits)  
 296 is negligible in the angular range shown. [Be careful to update this caption as it  
 297 uses a text to close to the published one.] . . . . . 3-21

298 3.23 Efficiency of the L1 trigger in the endcap region after Phase-II upgrade in the case  
 299 CSC/GEM/RPC hits are requested in at least 2 stations out of four (3.23a) and in all  
 300 four stations (3.23b). . . . . 3-22

301 3.24 Resolution of the LCT ambiguous events thanks to the combination of CSC and  
 302 iRPC readout data. Using CSCs only, 2 pairs of hits are possible. . . . . 3-23

303 3.25 The angular resolution on reconstructed muon tracks in the GEM overlap region  
 304  $2.0 < |\eta| < 2.15$  is compared for Phase-II conditions in the case CSC are alone  
 305 (Figure 3.25a) and in the case the GEMs' data, including ME0, is combined to which  
 306 of CSCs (Figure 3.25b). . . . . 3-23

307 3.26 Comparison of L1 trigger performances for prompt muons with and without the  
 308 addition of GEMs in the region  $2.1 < |\eta| < 2.4$  at Phase-II conditions. GEMs would  
 309 allow a reduction of the trigger accept rate by an order of magnitude (Figure 3.26a)  
 310 while increasing the trigger efficiency (Figure 3.26b). . . . . 3-24

311 3.27 The efficiency (solid lines) and streamer probability (dashed lines) of  $HFO/CO_2$   
 312 (Figure 3.27a) and  $CF_3I/CO_2$  (Figure 3.27b) based gas mixtures as a function of  
 313 the effective high-voltage are compared with the present CMS RPC gas mixture  
 314 represented in black. The detector used for the study is a single gap RPC with similar  
 315 properties than CMS RPCs. The streamer probability is defined as the proportion of  
 316 events with a deposited charge greater than  $20\text{ pC}$ . . . . . 3-25

317 4.1 Different phases of the avalanche development in the RPC gas volume subjected to  
 318 a constant electric field  $E_0$ . a) An avalanche is initiated by the primary ionisation  
 319 caused by the passage of a charged particle through the gas volume. b) Due to  
 320 its growing size, the avalanche starts to locally influence the electric field. c) The  
 321 electrons, lighter than the cations reach the anode first. d) The ions reach the cathode.  
 322 While the charges have not recombined, the electric field in the small region around  
 323 the avalanche stays affected and locally blinds the detector. . . . . 4-2

- 324        4.2 Movement of the charge carriers in an RPC. Figure 4.2a: Voltage across an RPC  
 325        whose electrode have a relative permittivity of 5 at the moment the tension s applied.  
 326        Figure 4.2b: After the charge carriers moved, the electrodes are charged and there  
 327        is no voltage drop over the electrodes anymore. The full potential is applied on the  
 328        gas gap only. Figure 4.2c: The streamer discharge initiated by a charged particle  
 329        transports electrons and cations towards the anode and cathode respectively. . . . . 4-4
- 330        4.3 Typical oscilloscope pulses in streamer mode (Figure 4.3a) and avalanche mode(Figure 4.3b).  
 331        In the case of streamer mode, the very small avalanche signal is visible. . . . . 4-4
- 332        4.4 Rate capability comparison for the streamer and avalanche mode of operation. An  
 333        order of magnitude in rate capability for a maximal efficiency drop of 10% is gained  
 334        by using the avalanche mode over the streamer mode. . . . . 4-5
- 335        4.5 Comparison of the charge distribution of signals induced by cosmic muons in an  
 336        RPC operated with a gas mixture of argon, butane and bromotrifluoromethane ( $CF_3Br$ ).  
 337        The  $Ar/C_4H_{10}$  is kept constant at 60/40 in volume while the total amount of  $CF_3Br$   
 338        in the mixture is varied: 0% (Figure 4.5a), 4% (Figure 4.5b) and 8% (Figure 4.5c) [39]. 4-6
- 339        4.6 Comparison of the efficiency and streamer probability, defined as the fraction of  
 340        events with an induced charge 10 times larger than that of the average avalanche,  
 341        with and without irradiation by a 24 GBq  $^{137}Cs$  source of an RPC successively  
 342        operated with a 90/10 mixture  $C_2H_2F_4/i-C_4H_{10}$  (Figure 4.6a) and a 70/5/10/15  
 343        mixture of  $Ar/i-C_4H_{10}/CO_2/C_2H_2F_4$  (Figure 4.6b) [40]. . . . . 4-6
- 344        4.7 Comparison of the fast charge ratio with and without irradiation by a 24 GBq  $^{137}Cs$   
 345        source of an RPC successively operated with a 90/10 mixture  $C_2H_2F_4/i-C_4H_{10}$   
 346        (Figure 4.7a) and a 70/5/10/15 mixture of  $Ar/i-C_4H_{10}/CO_2/C_2H_2F_4$  (Figure 4.7b).  
 347        The results are provided for both single gap and double gap operation [40]. . . . . 4-7
- 348        4.8 Effeciency (circles and stars with 30 mV and 100 mV thresholds respectively) and  
 349        streamer probability (opened circles) as function of the operating voltatge of a 2 mm  
 350        single gap HPL RPC flushed with a gas mixture containing (a) 5%, (b) 2%, (c) 1%  
 351        and (d) no  $SF_6$  [42]. . . . . 4-8
- 352        4.9 Evolution of the efficiency, working voltage, and voltage at 50% of maximum ef-  
 353        ficiency for CMS Barrel (Figure 4.9a) and Endcap (Figure 4.9b) RPCs obtained  
 354        through yearly voltage scans since 2011. The working voltage of each RPC is up-  
 355        dated after each voltage scan to ensure optimal operation [57]. . . . . 4-9
- 356        4.10 Possible double-gap RPC layouts: a) "standard" 1D double-gap RPC, as used in  
 357        CMS experiment, where the anodes are facing each other and a 1D read-out plane  
 358        is sandwiched in between them, b) double read-out double-gap RPC as used in AT-  
 359        LAS experiment, where the cathodes are facing each other and 2 read-out planes are  
 360        used on the outer surfaces. This last layout can offer the possibility to use a 2D  
 361        reconstruction by using orthogonal read-out planes. . . . . 4-10
- 362        4.11 Comparison of performance of CMS double and single gap RPCs using cosmic  
 363        muons [55]. Figure 4.11a: Comparison of efficiency sigmoids. Figure 4.11b: Volt-  
 364        age distribution at 95% of maximum efficiency. Figure 4.11c:  $\Delta_{10\%}^{90\%}$  distribution. . . 4-11
- 365        4.12 Presentation of ALICE MRPC using 250  $\mu m$  gas gaps, 620  $\mu m$  outer glass electrodes  
 366        and 550  $\mu m$  inner floating electrodes. More details on the labels are given in [60]. . . 4-12
- 367        4.13 Particle identification applied to electrons in the STAR experiment. The identifica-  
 368        tion is performed combining ToF and  $dE/dx$  measurements [65]. . . . . 4-13
- 369        4.14 Comparison of the detector performance of ALICE ToF MRPC [66] at fixed applied  
 370        voltage (in blue) and at fixed effective voltage (in red). The effective voltage is kept  
 371        fixed by increasing the applied voltage accordingly to the current drawn by the detector.4-13

372	4.15	Ratio between total induced and drifting charge have been simulated for single gap, double-gap and multigap layouts [67]. The total induced charge for a double-gap RPC is a factor 2 higher than for a multigap. . . . .	4-14
375	4.16	Charge spectra have been simulated for single gap, double-gap and multigap lay- outs [67]. It appears that when single gap shows a decreasing spectrum, double and multigap layouts exhibit a spectrum whose peak is detached from the origin. The detachment gets stronger as the number of gaps increases. . . . .	4-15
379	4.17	The maximal theoretical efficiency is simulated for single gap, double-gap and multi- gap layouts [67] at a constant gap thickness of 2 mm and using an effective Townsend coefficient of $9 \text{ mm}^{-1}$ . . . . .	4-15
382	5.1	Signals from the RPC strips are shaped by the FEE described on Figure 5.1a. Out- put LVDS signals are then read-out by a TDC module connected to a computer or converted into NIM and sent to scalers. Figure 5.1b describes how these converted signals are put in coincidence with the trigger. . . . .	5-3
386	5.2	Description of the principle of a CFD. A comparison of threshold triggering (left) and constant fraction triggering (right) is shown in Figure 5.2a. Constant fraction triggering is obtained thanks to zero-crossing technique as explained in Figure 5.2b. The signal arriving at the input of the CFD is split into three components. A first one is delayed and connected to the inverting input of a first comparator. A sec- ond component is connected to the noninverting input of this first comparator. A third component is connected to the noninverting input of another comparator along with a threshold value connected to the inverting input. Finally, the output of both comparators is fed through an AND gate. . . . .	5-4
395	5.3	Figure 5.3a: The integrated charge per region (Barrel, Endcap) is extrapolated to HL-LHC integrated luminosity ( $3000 \text{ fb}^{-1}$ ) using the data accumulated in 2016 in every HV channels. Figure 5.3b: The hit rate per region (Barrel, Endcap) is linearly extrapolated to HL-LHC highest instantaneous luminosity ( $5 \times 10^{34} \text{ cm}^{-2}\text{s}^{-1}$ ) using the rate as a function of instantaneous luminosity recorded by RPCs in 2017 showing a linear dependence. . . . .	5-5
401	5.4	Background Fluka simulation compared to 2016 Data at $L = 10^{34} \text{ cm}^{-2}\text{s}^{-1}$ in the fourth endcap disk region. A mismatch in between simulation and data can be observed. <a href="#">[To be understood.]</a> . . . . .	5-6
404	5.5	Layout of the test beam zone called X5c GIF at CERN. Photons from the radioactive source produce a sustained high rate of random hits over the whole area. The zone is surrounded by 8 m high and 80 cm thick concrete walls. Access is possible through three entry points. Two access doors for personnel and one large gate for material. A crane allows installation of heavy equipment in the area. . . . .	5-7
409	5.6	$^{137}\text{Cs}$ decays by $\beta^-$ emission to the ground state of $^{137}\text{Ba}$ (BR = 5.64%) and via the 662 keV isomeric level of $^{137}\text{Ba}$ (BR = 94.36%) whose half-life is 2.55 min. . . . .	5-8
411	5.7	Floor plan of the GIF++ facility. When the facility downstream of the GIF++ takes electron beam, a beam pipe is installed along the beam line (z-axis). The irradiator can be displaced laterally (its center moves from $x = 0.65 \text{ m}$ to $2.15 \text{ m}$ ), to increase the distance to the beam pipe. . . . .	5-8
415	5.8	Simulated unattenuated current of photons in the xz plane (Figure 5.8a) and yz plane (Figure 5.8b) through the source at $x = 0.65 \text{ m}$ and $y = 0 \text{ m}$ . With angular correction filters, the current of 662 keV photons is made uniform in xy planes. . . . .	5-9

418	5.9	Description of the RPC setup. Dimensions are given in mm. A tent containing RPCs 419 is placed at 1720 mm from the source container. The source is situated in the center 420 of the container. RE-4-2-BARC-161 chamber is 160 mm inside the tent. This way, 421 the distance between the source and the chambers plan is 2060 mm. Figure 5.9a 422 provides a side view of the setup in the $xz$ plane while Figure 5.9b shows a top view 423 in the $yz$ plane. . . . .	5-10
424	5.10	RE-4-2-BARC-161 chamber is inside the tent as described in Figure 5.9. In the top 425 right, the two scintillators used as trigger can be seen. This trigger system has an 426 inclination of $10^\circ$ relative to horizontal and is placed above half-partition B2 of the 427 RPCs. PMT electronics are shielded thanks to lead blocks placed in order to protect 428 them without stopping photons from going through the scintillators and the chamber. . . . .	5-11
429	5.11	Hit distributions over all 3 partitions of RE-4-2-BARC-161 chamber is showed on 430 these plots. Top, middle and bottom figures respectively correspond to partitions A, 431 B, and C. These plots show that some events still occur in other half-partitions than 432 B2, which corresponds to strips 49 to 64, in front of which the trigger is placed, con- 433 tributing to the inefficiency of detection of cosmic muons. In the case of partitions 434 A and C, the very low amount of data can be interpreted as noise. On the other hand, 435 it is clear that a little portion of muons reach the half-partition B1, corresponding to 436 strips 33 to 48. . . . .	5-12
437	5.12	Results are derived from data taken on half-partition B2 only. On the 18 <sup>th</sup> of June 438 2014, data has been taken on chamber RE-2-BARC-161 at building 904 (Prevessin 439 Site) with cosmic muons providing us a reference efficiency plateau of $(97.54 \pm$ 440 $0.15)\%$ represented by a black curve. A similar measurement has been done at GIF 441 on the 21 <sup>st</sup> of July with the same chamber giving a plateau of $(78.52 \pm 0.94)\%$ 442 represented by a red curve. . . . .	5-13
443	5.13	Representation of the layout used for the simulations of the test setup. The RPC is 444 represented as a yellow trapezoid while the two scintillators as blue cuboids looking 445 at the sky. A green plane corresponds to the muon generation plane within the sim- 446 ulation. Figure 5.9a shows a global view of the simulated setup. Figure 5.9b shows 447 a zommed view that allows to see the 2 scintillators as well as the full RPC plane. . . . .	5-14
448	5.14	$\gamma$ flux $F(D)$ is plot using values from table 5.1. As expected, the plot shows similar 449 attenuation behaviours with increasing distance for each absorption factors. . . . .	5-17
450	5.15	Figure 5.15a shows the linear approximation fit done via formulae 5.7 on data from 451 table 5.2. Figure 5.15b shows a comparison of this model with the simulated flux 452 using a and b given in figure 5.15a in formulae 5.4 and the reference value $D_0 =$ 453 $50\text{cm}$ and the associated flux for each absorption factor $F_0^{ABS}$ from table 5.1 . . . . .	5-19
454	5.16	Dose measurements has been done in a plane corresponding to the tents front side. 455 This plan is 1900 mm away from the source. As explained in the first chapter, a 456 lens-shaped lead filter provides a uniform photon flux in the vertical plan orthogonal 457 to the beam direction. If the second line of measured fluxes is not taken into account 458 because of lower values due to experimental equipments in the way between the 459 source and the tent, the uniformity of the flux is well showed by the results. . . . .	5-21
460	5.17	. . . . .	5-22
461	5.18	Evolution of the maximum efficiency for RE2 (5.18a) and RE4 (5.18b) chambers 462 with increasing extrapolated $\gamma$ rate per unit area at working point. Both irradiated 463 (blue) and non irradiated (red) chambers are shown. . . . .	5-24
464	5.19	Evolution of the working point for RE2 (5.19a) and RE4 (5.19b) with increasing 465 extrapolated $\gamma$ rate per unit area at working point. Both irradiated (blue) and non 466 irradiated (red) chambers are shown. . . . .	5-24

467	5.20 Evolution of the maximum efficiency at HL-LHC conditions, i.e. a background hit rate per unit area of 300 Hz/cm <sup>2</sup> , with increasing integrated charge for RE2 (5.20a) and RE4 (5.20b) detectors. Both irradiated (blue) and non irradiated (red) chambers are shown. The integrated charge for non irradiated detectors is recorded during test beam periods and stays small with respect to the charge accumulated in irradiated chambers. . . . .	5-25
473	5.21 Comparison of the efficiency sigmoid before (triangles) and after (circles) irradiation for RE2 (5.21a) and RE4 (5.21b) detectors. Both irradiated (blue) and non irradiated (red) chambers are shown. . . . .	5-25
476	5.22 Evolution of the Bakelite resistivity for RE2 (5.22a) and RE4 (5.22b) detectors. Both irradiated (blue) and non irradiated (red) chambers are shown. . . . .	5-26
478	5.23 Evolution of the noise rate per unit area for the irradiated chamber RE2-2-BARC-9 only. . . . .	5-26
480	A.1 (A.1a) View of the front panel of a V1190A TDC module [73]. (A.1b) View of the front panel of a V1718 Bridge module [74]. (A.1c) View of the front panel of a 6U 6021 VME crate [75]. . . . .	A-3
483	A.2 Module V1190A <i>Trigger Matching Mode</i> timing diagram [73]. . . . .	A-4
484	A.3 Structure of the ROOT output file generated by the DAQ. The 5 branches ( <code>EventNumber</code> , <code>number_of_hits</code> , <code>Quality_flag</code> , <code>TDC_channel</code> and <code>TDC_TimeStamp</code> ) are visible on the left panel of the ROOT browser. On the right panel is visible the histogram corresponding to the variable <code>nHits</code> . In this specific example, there were approximately 50k events recorded to measure the gamma irradiation rate on the detectors. Each event is stored as a single entry in the <code>TTree</code> . . . . .	A-10
490	A.4 The effect of the quality flag is explained by presenting the content of <code>TBranch number_of_hits</code> of a data file without <code>Quality_flag</code> in Figure A.4a and the content of the same <code>TBranch</code> for data corresponding to a <code>Quality_flag</code> where all TDCs were labelled as <code>GOOD</code> in Figure A.4b taken with similar conditions. It can be noted that the number of entries in Figure A.4b is slightly lower then in Figure A.4a due to the excluded events. . . . .	A-12
496	A.5 Using the same data as previously showed in Figure A.4, the effect of the quality flag is explained by presenting the reconstructed hit multiplicity of a data file without <code>Quality_flag</code> in Figure A.5a and the reconstructed content of the same RPC partition for data corresponding to a <code>Quality_flag</code> where all TDCs were labelled as <code>GOOD</code> in Figure A.5b taken with similar conditions. The artificial high content of bin 0 is completely suppressed. . . . .	A-12
502	A.6 WebDCS DAQ scan page. On this page, shifters need to choose the type of scan (Rate, Efficiency or Noise Reference scan), the gamma source configuration at the moment of data taking, the beam configuration, and the trigger mode. These information will be stored in the DAQ ROOT output. Are also given the minimal measurement time and waiting time after ramping up of the detectors is over before starting the data acquisition. Then, the list of HV points to scan and the number of triggers for each run of the scan are given in the table underneath. . . . .	A-14

509	B.1	Example of expected hit time distributions in the cases of efficiency (Figure B.1a) and noise/gamma rate per unit area (Figure B.1b) measurements as extracted from the raw ROOT files. The unit along the x-axis corresponds to ns. The fact that "the" muon peak is not well defined in Figure B.1a is due to the contribution of all the RPCs being tested at the same time that don't necessarily have the same signal arrival time. Each individual peak can have an offset with the ones of other detectors. The inconsistancy in the first 100 ns of both time distributions is an artefact of the TDCs and are systematically rejected during the analysis. . . . .	B-16
510			
511			
512			
513			
514			
515			
516			
517	B.2	The effect of the quality flag is explained by presenting the reconstructed hit multi- plicity of a data file without <code>Quality_flag</code> . The artificial high content of bin 0 is the effect of corrupted data. . . . .	B-19
518			
519			
520	B.3	Display of the masking tool page on the webDCS. The window on the left allows the shifter to edit <code>ChannelsMapping.csv</code> . To mask a channel, it only is needed to set the 3rd field corresponding to the strip to mask to 0. It is not necessary for older mapping file formats to add a 1 for each strip that is not masked as the code is versatile and the default behaviour is to consider missing mask fields as active strips. The effect of the mask is directly visible for noisy channels as the corresponding bin turns red. The global effect of masking strips will be an update of the rate value showed on the histogram that will take into consideration the rejected channels. . . . .	B-24
521			
522			
523			
524			
525			
526			
527			



# List of Tables

528

529	3.1	Details of the greenhouse fluorinated gases used in CMS and of their GWP [23]. . . . .	3-24
530	4.1	Properties of the most used electrode materials for RPCs. . . . .	4-3
531	5.1	Total photon flux ( $E\gamma \leq 662$ keV) with statistical error predicted considering a 532 $^{137}\text{Cs}$ activity of 740 GBq at different values of the distance $D$ to the source along 533 the x-axis of irradiation field [70]. . . . .	5-16
534	5.2	Correction factor $c$ is computed thanks to formulae 5.5 taking as reference $D_0 =$ 535 50 cm and the associated flux $F_0^{ABS}$ for each absorption factor available in table 5.1.	5-18
536	5.3	The data at $D_0$ in 1997 is taken from [70]. In a second step, using Equations 5.8 537 and 5.9, the flux at $D$ can be estimated in 1997. Then, taking into account the 538 attenuation of the source activity, the flux at $D$ can be estimated at the time of the 539 tests in GIF in 2014. Finally, assuming a sensitivity of the RPC to $\gamma$ $s = 2 \cdot 10^{-3}$ , 540 an estimation of the hit rate per unit area is obtained. . . . .	5-20
541	A.1	Inter-process communication cycles in between the webDCS and the DAQ through 542 file string signals. . . . .	A-19



# List of Acronyms

## A

549 AFL

Almost Full Level

550 ALCTs

anode local charged track boards

## B

555 BARC

Bhabha Atomic Research Centre

556 BLT

Block Transfer

557 BMTF

Barrel Muon Track Finder

558 BNL

Brookhaven National Laboratory

559 BR

Branching Ratio

## C

564 CAEN

Costruzioni Apparecchiature Elettroniche Nucleari S.p.A.

565 CERN

European Organization for Nuclear Research

566 CFD

Constant Fraction Discriminator

567 CFEBs

cathode front-end boards

568 CMB

Cosmic Microwave Background

569 CMS

Compact Muon Solenoid

570 CSC

Cathode Strip Chamber

571 CuOF

copper-to-optical-fiber translators

## D

576 DAQ

Data Acquisition

577 DCS

Detector Control Software

578 DQM

Data Quality Monitoring

579	<b>DT</b>	Drift Tube
580		
581		
582	<b>E</b>	
583		
584	<b>ECAL</b>	electromagnetic calorimeter
585	<b>EMTF</b>	Endcap Muon Track Finder
586		
587		
588	<b>F</b>	
589		
590	<b>FCC</b>	Future Circular Collider
591	<b>FEE</b>	Front-End Electronics
592	<b>FEB</b>	Front-End Board
593		
594		
595	<b>G</b>	
596		
597	<b>GE-/-</b>	Find a good description
598	<b>GE1/1</b>	Find a good description
599	<b>GE2/1</b>	Find a good description
600	<b>GEANT</b>	GEometry ANd Tracking - a series of software toolkit platforms developed by CERN
601		
602	<b>GEB</b>	GEM Electronics board
603	<b>GEM</b>	Gas Electron Multiplier
604	<b>GIF</b>	Gamma Irradiation Facility
605	<b>GIF++</b>	new Gamma Irradiation Facility
606	<b>GWP</b>	Global Warming Potential
607		
608		
609	<b>H</b>	
610		
611	<b>HCAL</b>	hadron calorimeter
612	<b>HL-LHC</b>	High Luminosity LHC
613	<b>HPL</b>	High-pressure laminate
614	<b>HV</b>	High Voltage
615		
616		
617	<b>I</b>	
618		
619	<b>iRPC</b>	improved RPC
620	<b>IRQ</b>	Interrupt Request
621	<b>ISR</b>	Intersecting Storage Rings

622

623

**L**

624

625

626	LEIR	Low Energy Ion Ring
627	LEP	Large Electron-Positron
628	LHC	Large Hadron Collider
629	LS1	First Long Shutdown
630	LS2	Second Long Shutdown
631	LS3	Third Long Shutdown
632	LV	Low Voltage
633	LVDS	Low-Voltage Differential Signaling

634

635

**M**

636

637

638	MiC1	first version of Minicrate electronics
639	MC	Monte Carlo
640	MCNP	Monte Carlo N-Particle
641	ME-/	Find good description
642	ME0	Find good description
643	MRPC	Multigap RPC

644

645

**N**

646

647

648	NIM	Nuclear Instrumentation Module logic signals
-----	-----	--

649

650

**O**

651

652

653	OH	Optohybrid Board
654	OMTF	Overlap Muon Track Finder

655

656

**P**

658

659	PMT	PhotoMultiplier Tube
660	PS	Proton Synchrotron
661	PU	pile-up

662

663

**Q**

664

665

666	<b>QCD</b>	Quantum Chromodynamics
667	<b>QED</b>	Quantum Electrodynamics
668		
669		
670	<b>R</b>	
671		
672	<b>RE/-</b>	Find a good description
673	<b>RE2/2</b>	Find a good description
674	<b>RE3/1</b>	Find a good description
675	<b>RE3/2</b>	Find a good description
676	<b>RE4/1</b>	Find a good description
677	<b>RE4/2</b>	Find a good description
678	<b>RE4/3</b>	Find a good description
679	<b>RMS</b>	Root Mean Square
680	<b>ROOT</b>	a framework for data processing born at CERN
681	<b>RPC</b>	Resistive Plate Chamber
682		
683		
684	<b>S</b>	
685		
686	<b>SC</b>	Synchrocyclotron
687	<b>SLAC</b>	Stanford Linear Accelerator Center
688	<b>SM</b>	Standard Model
689	<b>SPS</b>	Super Proton Synchrotron
690	<b>SUSY</b>	supersymmetry
691		
692		
693	<b>T</b>	
694		
695	<b>TDC</b>	Time-to-Digital Converter
696	<b>TDR</b>	Technical Design Report
697	<b>ToF</b>	Time-of-flight
698	<b>TPG</b>	trigger primitives
699		
700		
701	<b>W</b>	
702		
703	<b>webDCS</b>	Web Detector Control System
704		
705		
706	<b>Y</b>	
707		
708	<b>YETS</b>	Year End Technical Stop

# 1

## Introduction

709

710

<sup>711</sup> **1.1 A story of High Energy Physics**

<sup>712</sup> **1.2 Organisation of this study**



# 2

713

714

## Investigating the TeV scale

715 „We may regard the present state of the universe as the effect of the  
716 past and the cause of the future. An intellect which at any given mo-  
717 ment knew all of the forces that animate nature and the mutual posi-  
718 tions of the beings that compose it, if this intellect were vast enough  
719 to submit the data to analysis, could condense into a single formula  
720 the movement of the greatest bodies of the universe and that of the  
721 lightest atom; for such an intellect nothing could be uncertain and  
722 the future just like the past would be present before its eyes.”

723

724 - Pierre Simon de Laplace, *A Philosophical Essay on Probabilities*, 1814

Throughout history, physics experiment became more and more powerful in order to investigate finer details of nature and helped understanding the elementary blocks of matter and the fundamental interactions that bond them in the microscopic world. Nowadays, the Standard Model (SM) of particle physics is the most accurate theory designed to explain the behaviour of particles and was able to make very precise predictions that are constantly verified, although some hints of new physics are visible as bricks are still missing to have a global comprehension of the Universe.

To highlight the limits of the SM and test the different alternative theories, ever more powerful machines are needed. This is in this context that the Large Hadron Collider (LHC) has been thought and built to accelerate and collide particles at energies exceeding anything that had been done before. Higher collision energies and high pile-up imply the use of enormous detectors to measure the properties of the interaction products. The Compact Muon Solenoid (CMS) is a multipurpose experiment that have been designed to study the proton-proton collisions of the LHC and give answers on various high energy physics scenari. Nevertheless, the luminosity delivered by the collider will in the future be increased to levels beyond the original plans to improve its discovery potential giving no choice to experiments such as CMS to upgrade their technologies to cope with the increased radiation levels and detection rates.

## 2.1 The Standard Model of Particle Physics

In this early 21<sup>st</sup> century it is now widely accepted that matter is made of elementary blocks referred to as *elementary particles*. The physics theory that classifies and describes the best the behaviour and interaction of such elementary particles is the so called Standard Model that formalizes 3 of the 4 fundamental interactions (electromagnetic, weak and strong interactions). It's development took place during the 20<sup>th</sup> century thanks to a strong collaboration in between the theoretical and experimental physicists.

### 2.1.1 A history of particle physics

The idea that nature is composed of elementary bricks, called *atomism*, is not contemporary as it was already discussed by Indian or Greek philosophers during antiquity. In Greece, atomism has been rejected by Aristotelianism as the existance of *atoms* would imply the existance of a void that would violate the physical principles of Aristotle philosophy. Aristotelianism has been considered as a reference in the european area until the 15<sup>th</sup> century and the italian *Rinascimento* where antic text and history started to be more deeply studied. The re-discovery of Platon's philosophy would allow to open the door to alternative theories and give a new approach to natural sciences where experimentation would become central. A new era of knowledge was starting. By the begining of the 17<sup>th</sup> century, atomism was re-discovered by philosophers and the very first attempt to estimate an *atom* size would be provided by Magnetus in 1646. Although his *atoms* correspond to what would nowadays be called *molecules*, Magnetus achieved feats by calculating that the number of molecules in a grain of incense would be of the order of  $10^{18}$  simply by considering the time necessary to smell it everywhere in a large church after the stick was lit on. It is now known that this number only falls short by 1 order of magnitude.

An alternative philosophy to atomism popularized by Descartes was corpuscularianism. Built on ever divisible corpuscles, contrary to atoms, it's principles would be mainly used by alchemists like Newton who would later develop a corpuscular theory of light. Boyle would combine together ideas of both atomism or corpuscularianism leading to mechanical philosophy. The 18<sup>th</sup> century have

seen the development of engineering providing philosophical thought experiments with repeatable demonstration and a new point of view to explain the composition of matter and Lavoisier would greatly contribute to chemistry and atomism by publishing in 1789 a list of 33 chemical elements corresponding to what is now called *atoms*. In the early 19<sup>th</sup> century Dalton would summarize the knowledge on composition of matter and Fraunhofer would invent the spectrometer and discover the spectral lines. The rise of atomic physics, chemistry and mathematical formalism would unravel the different atomic elements and ultimately, the 20<sup>th</sup> century would see the very first sub-atomic particles.

**Discovery of the inner structure of the atom**

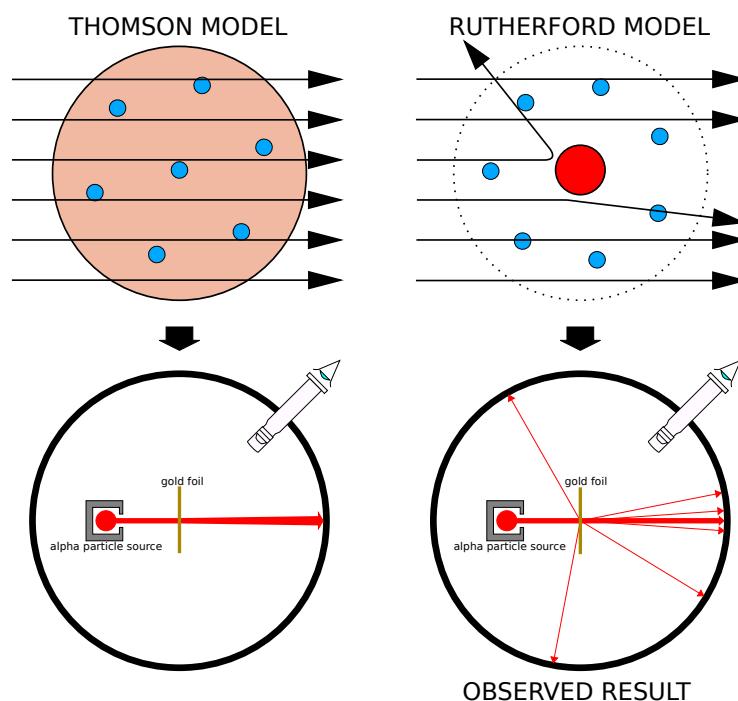


Figure 2.1: Through the gold foil experiment Rutherford could show that most of the mass of atoms was contained in a positively charged nucleus and could then propose a more accurate atomic model than that of Thomson.

The negative *electron* would be the first to be discovered in 1897 by Thomson after 3 decades of research on cathode rays by proving that the electrification observed in an electroscope, as reported by Perrin, was due to the rays themselves and that they had to be composed of electrically charged particles. In 1900, Becquerel would show the *beta rays* emitted by radium had the same charge over mass ratio than what measured by Thomson for cathode rays, pointing to electrons as a constituent of atoms. In 1907, Rutherford and Royds showed that *alpha* particles, once captured in a tube and subjected to an electric spark causing an electron avalanche, where helium ions as they could combine with 2 electrons to form a  ${}^4\text{He}$ . This discovery was directly followed by the constraint of the atom structure in 1909 through the gold foil experiment in which the deflection angle of alpha particles fired at a very thin gold foil was measured and highlighted atoms where mainly empty with

786 nearly all its mass contained into a tiny positively charged *nucleus*. With these two observations,  
 787 he could formulate the Rutherford model of the atom in 1911, shown together with the Thomson  
 788 plum pudding model in Figure 2.1. The link in between atomic number and number of positive and  
 789 negative charges contained into the atoms would fast be understood and the different kind of element  
 790 transmutation appeared to be purely nuclear processes making clear that the electromagnetic nature  
 791 of chemical transformation could not possibly change nuclei. Thus a new branch in physics appeared  
 792 to study nuclei exclusively: the nuclear physics.

793 Moreover, in 1913 quantum physics would be introduced into the atomic model by Bohr based  
 794 on the assumptions of Plank to explain spectral lines, and other observed quantum effects. The same  
 795 year, Moseley would confirm Borh's model and Debye would extend it by introducing elliptical  
 796 orbits.

797 By studying alpha emission and the product of their interaction with nitrogen gas, Rutherford  
 798 reported in 1919 the very first nuclear reaction leading to the discovery that the hydrogen nucleus was  
 799 composed of a single positively charged particle that was later baptised *proton*. This idea came from  
 800 1815 Prout's hypothesis proposing that all atoms are composed of "*protyles*" (i.e. hydrogen atoms).  
 801 By using scintillation detectors, Rutherford could highlight typical hydrogen nuclei signature and  
 802 understand that the impact of alpha particles with nitrogen would knock out an hydrogen nucleus  
 803 and produce an oxygen 17, as explicated in Formula 2.1 and would then postulate that protons are  
 804 building bricks of all elements.



805 With this assumption and the discovery of isotopes together with Aston, elements with identical  
 806 atomic number but different masses, Rutherford would propose that all elements' nuclei but hydrogen's are composed of both charged particles, protons, and of chargeless particles, which he called  
 807 *neutrons*, and that these neutral particles would help maintaining nuclei as one, as charged protons  
 808 were likely to electrostatically repulse each other, and introduced the idea of a new force, a *nuclear*  
 809 force. Though the first idea concerning neutrons was a bond state of protons and electrons as it was  
 810 known that the beta decay, emitting electrons, was taking place in the nucleus, it was then showed  
 811 that such a model would hardly be possible due to Heisenberg's uncertainty principle and by the  
 812 recently measured *spin* of both protons and electrons. The spin, discovered through the study of  
 813 the emission spectrum of alkali metals, would be understood as a "two-valued quantum degree of  
 814 freedom" and formalized by Pauli and extended by Dirac, to take the relativist case into account.  
 815 Measured to be  $\frac{1}{2}\hbar$  for both, it was impossible to arrange an odd number of half integer spins and  
 816 obtain a global nucleus spin that would be integer. Finally, in 1932, following the discovery of a new  
 817 neutral radiation, Chadwick could discover the neutron as an uncharged particle with a mass similar  
 818 to that of the proton whose half integer spin would reveal to be the solution to explain the nuclear  
 819 spin.

### 821 Development of the Quantum Electrodynamics

822 Historically, the development of the quantum theory revolved around the question of emission and  
 823 absorption of discrete amount of energy through light. Einstein used the initial intuition of Plank  
 824 about the black-body radiation to develop in 1905 a model to explain the photoelectric effect in  
 825 which light was described by discrete quanta now called *photons*. For this model, Einstein introduced  
 826 the concept of wave-particle duality as classical theory was not able to describe the phenomenon.  
 827 With the new understanding of atoms and of their structure, classical theories also proved unable

828 to explain atoms stability. Indeed, using classical mechanics, electrons orbiting around a nucleus  
 829 should radiate an energy proportional to their angular momentum and thus lose energy through  
 830 time and the spectrum of energy emission should then be continuous, but it was known since the  
 831 19<sup>th</sup> century and the discovery of spectral lines that the emission spectrum of material was discrete.

832 This was Bohr who first suggested that a quantum description of the atom was necessary in 1913.  
 833 Using the correspondence principle stating that at large enough numbers the quantum calculations  
 834 should give the same results than the classical theory, he proposed the very first quantum model  
 835 of the hydrogen atom explaining the line spectrum by introducing the principal quantum number  
 836  $n$  describing the electron shell. This model would then be improved by Sommerfeld that would  
 837 quantize the z-component of the angular momentum, leading to the second and third quantum  
 838 numbers, or azimuthal and magnetic quantum number,  $l$  and  $m$  defining for the second the orbital  
 839 angular momentum of the electrons on their shells and thus, the shape of the orbital, and for the third  
 840 the available orbital on the subshell for each electron. Nevertheless, although the model was not only  
 841 limited to spherical orbitals anymore, making the atom more realistic, the Zeeman effect couldn't be  
 842 completely explained by just using  $n$ ,  $l$  and  $m$ . A solution would be brought after the discovery of  
 843 Pauli in 1924, as Uhlenbeck, Goudsmit, and Kramers proposed in 1925 the idea of intrinsic rotation  
 844 of the electron, introducing a new angular momentum vector associated to the particle itself, and  
 845 not to the orbital, and associated to a new quantic number  $s$ , the *spin* projection quantum number  
 846 explaining the lift of degeneracy to an even number of energy levels.

847 The introduction of the *spin* happened 1 year after another attempt of improvement of the theory  
 848 was made by De Broglie in his PhD thesis. The original formulation of the quantum theory only  
 849 considered photons as energy quanta behaving as both waves and particles. De Broglie proposed  
 850 that all matter are described by waves and that their momentum is proportional to the oscillation of  
 851 quantized electromagnetic field oscillators. This interpretation was able to reproduce the previous  
 852 version of the quantum energy levels by showing that the quantum condition involves an integer  
 853 multiple of  $2\pi$ , as shown by Formula 2.2.

$$p = \hbar k \Leftrightarrow \int pdx = \hbar \int kdx = 2\pi\hbar n \quad (2.2)$$

854 Although the intuition of De Broglie about the wave-particle duality of all matter, his interpretation  
 855 was semiclassical and it's in 1926 that the first fully quantum mechanical wave-equation would  
 856 be introduced by Schrödinger to describe electron-like particles, reproducing the previous semiclassical  
 857 formulation without inconsistencies. This complexe equation describes the evolution of the  
 858 wave function  $\Psi$  of the quantum system, defined by its position vector  $\mathbf{r}$  and time  $t$  as an energy  
 859 conservation law, in which the hamiltonian of the system  $\hat{H}$  is explicit, by solving the Equation 2.3.

$$i\hbar \frac{\partial}{\partial t} |\Psi(\mathbf{r}, t)\rangle = \hat{H} |\Psi(\mathbf{r}, t)\rangle \quad (2.3)$$

860 In 1927, Dirac would go further in his paper about emission and absorption of radiation by  
 861 proposing a second quantization not only of the physical process at play but also of the electromagnetic  
 862 field, providing the ingredients to the first formulation of *Quantum Electrodynamics (QED)*  
 863 and the description of photon emission by electrons dropping into a lower energy state in which the  
 864 final number of particles is different than the initial one. To complete this model to the many-body  
 865 wave functions of identical particles, Jordan included creation and annihilation operators for fields  
 866 obeying Fermi-Dirac statistics leading to a model describing particles that would be referred to as  
 867 *fermions*. Nevertheless, in order to properly treat electromagnetism, the incorporation of the relativ-

868 ity theory developed by Einstein. Including gravity into quantum physics still is a challenge nowa-  
 869 days, but in 1928 Pauli and Jordan would show that special relativity's coordinate transformations  
 870 could be applied to quantum fields as the field commutators were Lorentz invariant. Finally derived  
 871 the same year, the Dirac equation, shown as Equation 2.4, similarly to Schrödinger's equation, is a  
 872 single-particle equation but it incorporates special relativity in addition to quantum mechanics rules.  
 873 It features the  $4 \times 4$  gamma matrices  $\gamma^\mu$  built using  $2 \times 2$  Pauli matrices and unitary matrix, the  
 874 4-gradient  $\partial_\mu$ , the rest mass  $m$  of any half integer spin massive particle described by the wave func-  
 875 tion  $\psi(x, t)$ , also called a Dirac spinor, and the speed of light  $c$ . In addition to perfectly reproduce  
 876 the results obtained with quantum mechanics so far, it also provided with *negative-energy solutions*  
 877 that would later be interpreted as a new form of matter, *antimatter* and give a theoretical justifica-  
 878 tion to the Pauli equation that was phenomenologically constructed to account for the spin as in the  
 879 non-relativistic limit, the Dirac equation is similar.

$$i\hbar\gamma^\mu\partial_\mu\psi - mc\psi = 0 \quad (2.4)$$

880 The successes of the QED was soon followed with theoretical problems as computations of any  
 881 physical process involving photons and charged particles were showed to be only reliable at the first  
 882 order of perturbation theory. At higher order of the theory, divergent contributions were appearing  
 883 giving nonsensical results. Only two effects were contributing to these infinities.

- 884 • The self-energy of the electron (or positron), the energy that the particle has due its own  
   885 interaction with its environment.
- 886 • The vacuum polarization, virtual electron–positron pairs produced by a background electro-  
   887 magnetic field in the vacuum which is not an "empty" space. These virtual pairs affect the  
   888 charge and current distributions generated by the original electromagnetic field.

889 Solving this apparent problem was done by carefully defining the concepts of each observables,  
 890 for example mass or charge, as these quantities are understood within the context of a non-interacting  
 891 field equation, and that from the experiment point of view, they are abstractions as what is measured  
 892 are "renormalized observables" shifted from there "bare" value by the interaction taking place in  
 893 the measuring process. The infinities needed to be connected to corrections of mass and charge  
 894 as those are fixed to finite values by experiment. This was the intuition of Bethe in 1947 who  
 895 successfully computed the effect of such *renormalization* in the non-relativist case. Fully covariant  
 896 formulations of QED including renormalization was achieved by 1949 by Tomonaga, Schwinger,  
 897 Feynman and Dyson and Feynman is now famous for his association of diagrams to the term of  
 898 the scattering matrix, greatly simplifying the representation and computation of interactions as the  
 899 diagrams directly corresponded the measurable physical processes and would then be used in every  
 900 quantum field theories. With the resolution of infinities, QED had mostly reached its final form,  
 901 being still today the most accurate physical theory and would serve as a model to build all other  
 902 quantum field theories.

### 903 Development of the quark model and Quantum Chromodynamics

904 To explain the nuclear force that holds *nucleons* (protons and neutrons) together, Yukawa theoreti-  
 905 cally proposed in 1934 the existence of a force carrier called *meson* due to it's predicted mass in  
 906 the range in between the electron and nucleon masses. Discovered in 1936 by Anderson and Ned-  
 907 dermeyer, and confirmed using bubble chambers in 1937 by Street and Stevenson, a first meson

908 candidate was observed in the decay products of cosmic rays. Assuming it had the same electric  
 909 charge than electrons and protons, this particle was observed to have a curvature due to magnetic  
 910 field that was sharper than protons but smoother than electrons resulting in a mass in between that  
 911 of electrons and protons. But its properties were not compatible with Yukawa's theory, which was  
 912 emphasized by the discovery of a new candidate in 1947, again in cosmic ray products using photo-  
 913 graphic emulsions.

914 This new candidate, although it had a similar mass than the already believed *meson*, would rather  
 915 decay into it. For distinction, the first candidate would then be renamed "*mu meson*" when the second  
 916 would be the "*pi meson*". The *mu meson* was behaving like a heavy electron and didn't participate  
 917 in the strong interaction whereas the pion was believed to be the carrier of the nuclear interaction.  
 918 This lead to classify the *mu* in a new category of particles called *leptons* together with the electron  
 919 that shared similar properties and *the neutrino*, and be renamed *muon*. The *pi meson* was finally  
 920 found to be a triplet of particles: a positively charged, a negatively charged, and a neutral particle.  
 921 The neutral *pi meson* has been more difficult to identify as it wouldn't leave tracks on emulsions nor  
 922 on bubble chambers and needed to be studied via it's decay products. It was ultimately identified in  
 923 University of California's cyclotron in 1950 through the observation of its decay into 2 photons.

924 Also discovered in 1947 but in cloud chamber photographs, the *K meson* as also been an im-  
 925 portant step towards the establishment of the Standard Model. A triplet of particle, 2 charged and a  
 926 neutral, with a mass roughly half that of a proton, were reported. These particles were baptised *K*  
 927 *meson* in contrast to the "light" *pi* and *mu* "L-mesons". The particularity of the *K* were there very  
 928 slow decays with a typical lifetime of the order of  $10^{-10}$ s much greater than the  $10^{-23}$ s of *pi*-proton  
 929 reactions. The concept of *strangeness*, a new quantum number was then introduced by Pais as an  
 930 attempt to explain this phenomenon as *strange* particles appeared as a pair production of a strange  
 931 and anti-strange particle.

932 With the development of synchrotrons, the particle *zoo* would grow to several dozens during the  
 933 1950s as higher energies were reachable through acceleration. In 1961, a first classification system,  
 934 called Eightfold Way, was proposed by Gell-Mann and finding its roots in the Gell-Mann–Nishijima  
 935 formula, which relates the electric charge  $Q$ , the third component of the isospin  $I_3$ , the *baryon*  
 936 number  $B$  and the strangeness  $S$ , as explicitated in Formula 2.5. The isospin was a quantum number  
 937 introduced in 1932 to explain symmetries of the newly discovered neutron using representation  
 938 theory of SU(2). The baryon number, was introduced by Nishijima as a quantum number for baryons,  
 939 i.e. particles of the same family as nucleons. The mesons were classified in an octet and baryons of  
 940 spin  $\pm \frac{1}{2}$  and  $\pm \frac{3}{2}$  were respectively classified into an octet and a decuplet, as shown in Figure 2.2. To  
 941 complete the baryon decuplet, Gell-Mann predicted the existance of baryon  $\Omega^-$  which would later  
 942 be discovered in 1964.

$$Q = I_3 + \frac{1}{2}(B + S) \quad (2.5)$$

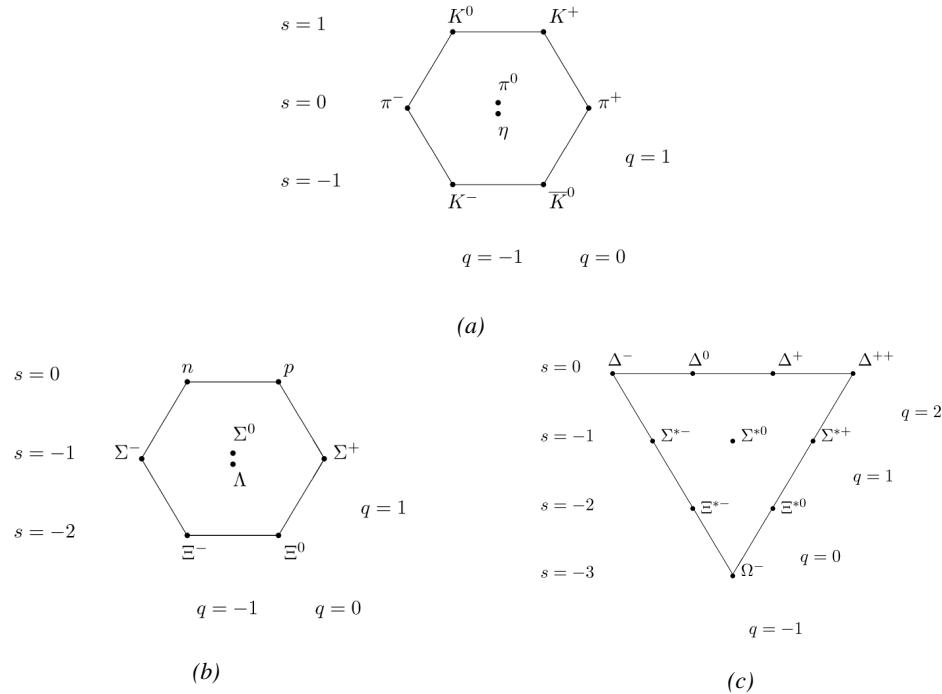


Figure 2.2: Figure 2.2a: Meson octet. Figure 2.2b: Baryon octet. Figure 2.2c: Baryon decuplet.

Strong of this classification using an SU(3) flavor symmetry, Gell-Mann, and independently Zweig, would propose a full theoretical model in which *hadrons* (strongly interacting particles, i.e. mesons and baryons) were not elementary particles anymore. They would rather be composed with 3 flavors of particles called *quarks* and there anti-particles. The 3 flavors were called *up*, *down* and *strange*. *Up* and *down* would be used to explain the nucleons and non-strange mesons, while *strange* would come into the composition of hadrons showing strangeness. *Up* and *down* flavors would be discovered in 1968 thanks to the deep inelastic scattering experiments conducted at the Stanford Linear Accelerator Center (SLAC), and *strange* could only be indirectly validated even though it provided a robust explanation to *kaon* ( $K$ ) and *pion* ( $\pi$ ). However, in the decade following the Gell-Mann-Zweig quark model proposition, several improvement to the model were brought, first by Glashow and Bjorken the same year that predicted the existence of a fourth quark flavor, the *charm*, that would equalize the then known number of quarks and leptons and finally in 1973 by Kobayashi and Maskawa that would increase the number of quarks to 6 to explain the experimental observation of CP violation. These two quarks would be referred to as *top* and *bottom* for the first time in 1975. It's only after these additions to the quark model that finally the *charm* would be discovered in 1974 at both SLAC and Brookhaven National Laboratory (BNL). A meson where the *charm* was bound with an *anti-charm*, called  $J/\psi$ , would help convince the physics community of the validity of the model. The *top* would be discovered soon after in 1977 in Fermilab and indicate the existence of the *bottom* that would resist to discovery until Fermilab's experiments CDF and D $\emptyset$  in 1995 due its very large mass and the energy needed to produce it.

As remarked by Struminsky, the original quark model proposal composed of 3 quarks should possess an additional quantum number due to mesons such as  $\Omega^-$  or  $\Delta^{++}$ . Indeed, these mesons are composed of 3 identical quarks, respectively 3 *strange* and *up* quark, with parallel spins, which

should be forbidden by the exclusion principle. Independentle, Greenberg and Han-Nambu proposed an additional SU(3) degree of freedom possessed by the quarks, that would later be refered to as *color charge gauge*, that could interact through *gluons*, the gauge boson octet corresponding to this degree of freedom. Nevertheless, as observing free quarks proved to be impossible, two visions of the quarks were argued mainly due to the failures to observe these particles free to prove their existence. On one side, Gell-Mann proposed to see quarks as mathematical construct instead of real particles, as they are always confined, implying that quantum field theory would not describe entirely the strong interaction. Opposed to this vision, Feynman on the contrary argued that quarks were real particles, that he would call *partons*, that should be described as all other particles by a distribution of position and momentum. The implications of quarks as point-like particles would be verified at SLAC and the concept of *color* would be added to the quark model in 1973 by Fritzsch and Leutwyler together with Gell-Mann to propose a description of the strong interaction through the theory of Quantum Chromodynamics (QCD). The discovery the same year of asymptotic freedom within the QCD by Groos, Politzer and Wilczek, allowed for very precise predictions thanks to the perturbation theory. Nowadays, the confinement of quarks is studied in experiments such as ALICE, through exploration of the quark-gluon plasma.

### The Weak interaction, spontaneous symmetry breaking, the Higgs mechanism and the Electroweak unification

The weak interaction is the process that causes radioactive decays. Thanks to the neutron discovery, Fermi could explain in 1934 the beta radiations through the beta decay process in which the neutron decays into a proton by emitting an electron. Though the missing energy observed during this process triggered a huge debate about the apparent non conservation of energy, momentum and spin of the process, Fermi, as Pauli before him, proposed that the missing energy was due to a neutral not yet discovered particle that would then be baptised *neutrino*. The impossibility to detect such a particle would leave some members of the scientific community sceptical, but hints of energy conservation and of the existence of the neutrino were provided by measuring the energy spectrum of electrons emitted through beta decay, as there was a strict limit on their energy. It's only 30 years later in 1953 that it would be discovered by the team of Cowan and Reines using the principle of inverse beta decay described through Formula 2.6. The experiment consisted in placing water tanks sandwiched in between liquid scintillators near a nuclear reactor with an estimated neutrino flux of  $5 \times 10^{13} \text{ s}^{-1} \text{ cm}^{-2}$ . However, in order to explain the absence of some reactions in the experiment of Cowan and Reines, and constraint the beta decay theory of Fermi and extend it to the case of the muon, Konopinski and Mahmoud proposed in 1953 that the muon decay would eject a particle similar to the neutrino and thus predicted the existence of a muon neutrino that would be different than the one involved in the beta decay, related to the electron. With this, the idea of lepton number would arise. The muon neutrino would successfully be detected in 1962 by Lederman, Schwartz and Steinberger.

$$\bar{\nu} + p \rightarrow n + e^+ \quad (2.6)$$

The theory could not be valid though as the probability of interaction, called cross-section, would have been increasing without bond with the square of the energy. Fermi assumed in a two vector current coupling but Lee and Yang noted that an axial current could appear and would violate parity. The experiment of Wu in 1956 would confirm the parity violation and Gamow and Teller would try to account for it by describing Fermi's interaction through allowed (parity-violating) and superallowed

1008 (parity-conserving) decays. But the success of QED as a quantum field theory would spark the  
1009 development of such a theory to describe the weak interaction.

1010 As previously discussed, the great success of QED was built on an underlying symmetry, inter-  
1011 preted as a gauge invariance so that the effect of the force is the same in all space-time coordinates,  
1012 and of the possibility to renormalize it in order to absorb the infinities. Independently in 1958,  
1013 Glashow, and Salam and Ward used 1957 Schwinger ideas about vector intermediary for the decay  
1014 processes, could find a way to unite both the electromagnetic and weak interaction into a gauge  
1015 theory involving 4 gauge bosons, 3 of which were massive and carried out the weak interaction and  
1016 a massless boson carrying the electromagnetic interaction. Among the 3 massive bosons, 2 were  
1017 charged and 1 was neutral, similarly to the previously theorized *pi meson* vector of the Yukawa  
1018 model and all have a mass much greater than nucleons and thus a very short life time implying a  
1019 finite very short range contrary to the contact interaction originally proposed by Fermi.

1020 Breakthrough in other fields of physics contributed in giving theoretical support and interpreta-  
1021 tion to the unified electroweak theory. The stepping stone would be the use of spontaneous symmetry  
1022 breaking that was inspired to Nambu at the end of the 1950s following the development of the BCS  
1023 superconductivity mechanism in 1957. Cooper had shown that BCS pairs, pairs of electrons bound  
1024 together at low temperature, could have lower energy than the Fermi energy and where responsi-  
1025 ble for superconductivity. This lead to the discovery of Goldstone-Nambu bosons as a result of the  
1026 spontaneous breaking of the chiral symmetry in a theory describing nucleons and mesons devel-  
1027 opped by Nambu and Jona-Lasinio in 1961, and now understood as a low-energy approximation of  
1028 QCD. Similarly to mechanism of energy gap appearance in superconductivity, the nucleon mass  
1029 is suggested to the result of a self-energy of a fermion field and is studied through a four-fermion  
1030 interaction in which, as a consequence of the symmetry, bound states of nucleon-antinucleon pairs  
1031 appear and can be regarded as virtual pions. Though the symmetry is maintained in the equations,  
1032 the ground state is not preserved. Goldstone would later the same year show that the bound states  
1033 corresponds to spinless bosons with zero mass.

1034 Although the model in itself didn't revolutionize particle physics, spontaneous symmetry break-  
1035 ing would be generalized to quantum field theories. As all fundamental interactions are described  
1036 using gauge theories based on underlying symmetries, processes such as the chiral symmetry break-  
1037 ing would be introduced soon after the publication of Nambu and Jona-Lasinio. In 1962, Anderson,  
1038 following an idea of Schwinger who suggested that zero-mass vector bosons were not necessarily  
1039 required to describe the conservation of baryons contrary to the bosons emerging from chiral sym-  
1040 metry breaking, discussed the implications of spontaneous symmetry breaking in particles physics.  
1041 A model was finally independently built in 1964 by Brout and Englert, Higgs, and Guralnik, Hagen,  
1042 and Kibble, who discovered that combining an additional field into a gauge theory in order to break  
1043 the symmetry, the resulting gauge bosons acquire a nonzero mass. Moreover, Higgs stated that this  
1044 implied the existence of at least one new massive, i.e. self-interacting, scalar boson, that are now  
1045 known as *Higgs bosons* corresponding to this additional field. The Higgs mechanism today specific-  
1046 ally refers to the process through which the gauge bosons of the weak interaction acquire mass. In  
1047 1968, Weinberg could point to the Higgs mechanism to integrate a Higgs field into a new version  
1048 of the electroweak theory in which the spontaneous symmetry breaking mechanism of the Higgs  
1049 field would explicitly explain the masses of the weak interaction gauge bosons and the zero-mass  
1050 of photons.

### 2.1.2 Construction and test of the model

The Standard Model of particle physics was built in the middle of the 1970s after the experimental confirmation of the existence of quarks. It is based on the assembly of the models previously introduced and describing the fundamental interactions, except for gravitation, and their gauge bosons as well as the way elementary "matter" particles interact with the fields associated with these force carriers. In this sense, the development of QED and the unification of the electroweak interaction, of the Yukawa interaction and of QCD, and of the Higgs mechanism made it possible to explain most of contemporary physics.

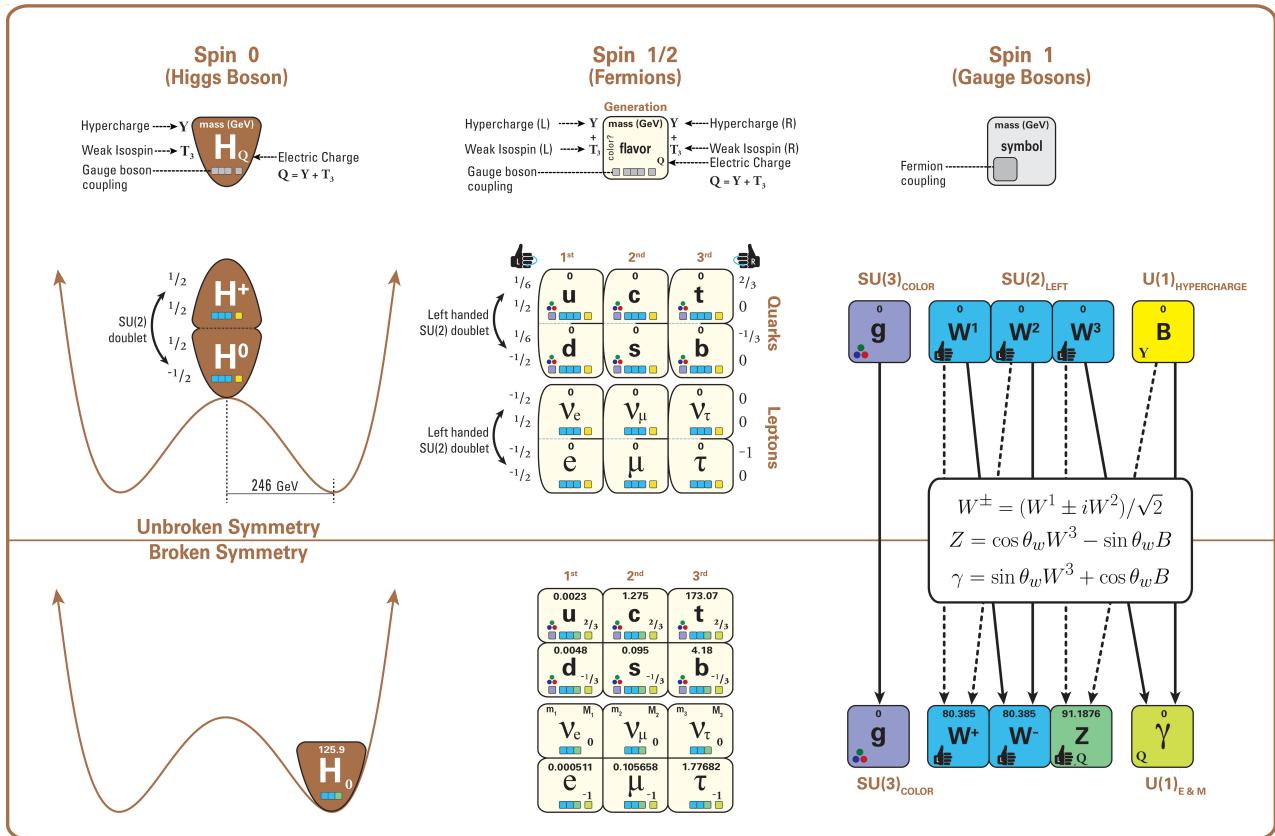


Figure 2.3: The elementary particles of the Standard Model are showed along with their names and properties. Their interactions with the strong, weak and electromagnetic forces have been explicited using color squares. In the left column, the scalar higgs boson is depicted, while the central is focused on the matter particles, the fermions, and the right on the force carriers, the gauge bosons. The role of the Higgs boson in electroweak symmetry breaking is highlighted, and the corresponding way properties of the various particles differ in the (high-energy) symmetric phase (top) and the (low-energy) broken-symmetry phase (bottom) are showed.

In the SM, "matter" particles, are described by 12 fermion fields of spin  $\frac{1}{2}$  obeying the Fermi-Dirac statistics, i.e. subjected to the Pauli exclusion principle. To each fermion is associated its corresponding antiparticle. The fermions are classified according to the way they interact and, thus, according to the charges they carry. 6 of them are classified as quarks ( $u, d, c, s, t$ , and  $b$ ) and are subjected to all interactions and the 6 others as leptons ( $e^-, \mu^-, \tau^-, \nu_e, \nu_\mu$ , and  $\nu_\tau$ ). Leptons

1064 are not subjected to the strong interaction and among them, the 3 neutrinos only interact weakly as  
 1065 they are neutral particles, which explains why they are so difficult to detect. The gauge boson fields  
 1066 are the gluons  $g$  for the strong interaction, the photon  $\gamma$  for the electromagnetic interaction and the  
 1067 weak bosons  $W^+$ ,  $W^-$ , and  $Z^0$  for the weak interaction. Finally, the Higgs field  $H^0$  is responsible,  
 1068 through the spontaneous symmetry breaking, of the mixing of the massless electroweak boson fields  
 1069  $W_1$ ,  $W_2$ ,  $W_3$ , and  $B$  leading to the observable states  $\gamma$ ,  $W^+$ ,  $W^-$ , and  $Z^0$  that can gain mass while  
 1070 interacting with the Higgs field. This picture of the SM is summarized through Figure 2.3 where the  
 1071 antifermions are not showed.

1072 When the model was first finalized, the existence of the weak gauge bosons, of the charm, of the  
 1073 third quark generation composed of top and bottom quarks to explain the observed CP violation was  
 1074 not proven but the predictions were measured with good precision in the years following. First, the  
 1075 charm quark would be discovered in 1974, followed by the bottom quark in 1977. The weak bosons  
 1076 would be discovered during the next decade in 1983. The top quark would resist until 1995 due to  
 1077 its very large mass but would offer the last piece of the elementary QCD particles. The very last  
 1078 predicted elementary particle of the model that was not observed yet would prove to be very difficult  
 1079 to observe. the Higgs boson needed the start of the LHC to finally be observed in 2012. A few years  
 1080 more of tests were necessary to measure its properties to confirm the observation of a scalar boson  
 1081 compatible with the predicted Higgs boson  $H^0$ . Eventhough only quark-antiquark (mesons) and 3  
 1082 quark states (baryons) were observed, exotic hadrons were not forbidden by QCD and no limit of  
 1083 quark is imposed by the theory. Moreover, gluons could form bond states by themselves and with  
 1084 quarks. These two types of states are called *glueballs* and *hybrid hadrons*. For decades, experi-  
 1085 ments have been conducted without confirmation of such possible states existing. Nevertheless, in  
 1086 2014, tetraquarks were observed by LHCb, one of LHC's main experiments, and in 2015, the same  
 1087 experiment reported the discovery of pentaquarks making the SM one of the best tested theories of  
 1088 physics.

### 1089 2.1.3 Investigating the TeV scale

1090 Even though the SM is a well tested theory, several hints of physics going beyond its scope have  
 1091 been observed. First of all, gravity is not explained through this model and huge difficulties are en-  
 1092 countered when trying to include gravitation. The strength of gravitational interaction is expected to  
 1093 be negligible at the scale of elementary particles, nevertheless, adding gravitation in the perspective  
 1094 of developing a "theory of everything" leads to divergent integrals that could not be fixed through  
 1095 renormalization.

1096 Moreover, the SM considers neutrinos to be massless but it was shown in the late 1960s by the  
 1097 Homestake experiment that the flux of solar neutrinos (i.e.  $\nu_e$ ) measured didn't match the predicted  
 1098 values due to neutrino oscillations, confirmed in the early 2000s by the Sudbury Neutrino Obser-  
 1099 vatory. This oscillation implies that neutrinos that can be observed are a superposition of massive  
 1100 neutrino states. The research on neutrino oscillation is already quite advanced with experiments  
 1101 looking at atmospheric, reactor or beam neutrinos in order to determine the elements of the mixing  
 1102 matrix similar to the CKM matrix describing the mixing of quarks. Nevertheless, no answer to the  
 1103 origin of neutrino mass is provided.

1104 Another intriguing fact is that the universe is dominated by matter. However, the SM predicted  
 1105 that matter and antimatter should have been created in equal amounts and no mechanism is able to  
 1106 explain this matter-antimatter asymmetry. Although this asymmetry is seen from the visible uni-  
 1107 verse, it may be possible that other unknown regions of the Universe are dominated by antimatter.

1108 Another possibility to explain the apparent asymmetry would be the existence of a electric dipole  
1109 in any fundamental particle that would permit matter and antimatter particles to decay at different  
1110 rates.

1111 The discrepancy of velocity dispersion of stars in galaxies with respect to the visible mass they  
1112 contain is known since the end of the 19<sup>th</sup> century where Kelvin proposed that this problem could  
1113 be solved if a "*great majority of [the stars] would be dark bodies*". Throughout the 20<sup>th</sup> century,  
1114 physicists like Kapteyn, Zwicky, showed the first hints of a "*dark matter*" by studying star veloc-  
1115 ities and galactic clusters, followed by robust measurements of galaxy rotation curves by Babcock  
1116 which suggested that the mass-to-luminosity ratio was different from what would be expected from  
1117 watching the visible light. Later in the 1970s, Rubin and Ford from direct light observations and  
1118 Rogstad and Shostak from radio measurements showed that the radial velocity of visible objects in  
1119 galaxies was increasing with increasing distance to the center of the galaxy. Finally observation of  
1120 lensing effect by galaxy clusters, temperature distribution of hot gas in galaxies and clusters, and  
1121 the anisotropies in the Cosmic Microwave Background (CMB) kept on pointing to a "*dark matter*".  
1122 From all the data accumulated, the visible matter would only account to no more than 5% of the total  
1123 content on the visible universe. Alternative theories have tried to investigate modified versions of  
1124 the General Relativity as this theory is only well tested at the scale of the solar system but is not suf-  
1125 ficiently tested on wider ranges or even theories in which gravitation is not a fundamental force but  
1126 rather an emergent one, but so far, such theories have difficulties to reproduce all the experimental  
1127 observations as easily as through dark matter.

1128 A possible theory to offer dark matter candidates would be supersymmetry (SUSY) which pro-  
1129 poses a relationship in between bosons and fermions. In this model, each elementary particle,  
1130 through a spontaneous spacetime symmetry breaking mechanism would have a *super partner* from  
1131 the other family of particles. On top of providing heavy dark matter candidates, supersymmetry  
1132 could also help solving the *Hierarchy problem*, the very large scale difference in between the weak  
1133 interaction and gravity, although, as mentioned before, in the case gravity is found not to be a funda-  
1134 mental force, this problem would automatically fade.

1135

1136 All these different aspects of physics beyond the Standard Model of particle physics and the  
1137 Standard model itself can be tested through the use of very energetic and intense hadron and ion col-  
1138 liders. The LHC at CERN is a perfect tool to seek answers to these open questions except maybe for  
1139 the gravity as gravity is extremely weak at particles level. For example, one of LHCb experiment's  
1140 goal is to investigate CP-violation and thus baryonic asymmetry. In 2017, the collaboration has an-  
1141 nounced to have so far a  $3.3\sigma$  statistical significance over a CP-violation through the study of the  
1142 decays of  $\Lambda_b^0$  and  $\overline{\Lambda}_b^0$  into a proton (or antiproton) and 3 pions. Many analysis teams are also working  
1143 hard on supersymmetry both in ATLAS and CMS collaborations, the two multipurpose experiments  
1144 of LHC, even though no evidence of a supersymmetrical theory was seen, the few hint having the  
1145 tendency to confirm the standard model. These experiments also have the possibility to investigate  
1146 ways to explain Majorana neutrino mass through Yukawa interactions of scalar particles.

1147 The higher the center-of-mass energy, the smaller details the experiments will be able to see, the  
1148 heavier the potential particle creation barrier will be, the stronger the cross-section of certain rare  
1149 decay channels will be. As a comparison, with collisions happening at 14 TeV, the LHC is approxi-  
1150 mately 2 orders of magnitude more sensitive to the Higgs than the Tevatron was with its already very  
1151 powerful 2 TeV. All these advantages eventually lead to new discoveries and deeper understanding  
1152 of the models describing our Universe. But the LHC only is a step forward to gather more precise  
1153 tests of the Standard Model and new knowledge about the physics beyond it. A successful physics

1154 campaign will probably serve to justify the building of new accelerators with even greater discovery  
1155 potential like for example the Future Circular Collider (FCC) that would push even further the study  
1156 of the unanswered questions of contemporary physics.

## 1157 2.2 The Large Hadron Collider & the Compact Muon Solenoid

1158 Throughout its history, CERN has played a leading role in high energy particle physics. Large re-  
1159 gional facilities such as CERN were thought after the second world war in an attempt to increase  
1160 international scientific collaboration and allows scientists to share the forever increasing costs of  
1161 experiment facilities required due to the need for increasing the energy in the center of mass to  
1162 deeper probe matter. The construction of the first accelerators at the end of the 50s, the Synchro-  
1163 cyclotron (SC) and the Proton Synchrotron (PS), was directly followed by the first observation of  
1164 antinuclei in 1965 [1]. Strong from the experience of the Intersecting Storage Rings (ISR), the very  
1165 first proton-proton collider that showed hints that protons are not elementary particles, the Super  
1166 Proton Synchrotron (SPS) was built in the 70s to investigate the structure of protons, the preference  
1167 for matter over antimatter, the state of matter in the early universe or exotic particles, and lead to  
1168 the discovery in 1983 of the W and Z bosons [2–5]. These newly discovered particles and the elec-  
1169 troweak interaction would then be studied in details by the Large Electron-Positron (LEP) collider  
1170 that will help to prove in 1989 that there only are three generations of elementary particles [6]. The  
1171 LEP would then be dismantled in 2000 to allow for the LHC to be constructed in the existing tunnel.

### 1172 2.2.1 LHC, the most powerful particle accelerator

1173 The LHC has always been considered as an option to the future of CERN. At the moment of the  
1174 construction of the LEP beneath the border between France and Switzerland, the tunnel was built in  
1175 order to accomodate what would be a Large Hadron Collider with a dipole field of 10 T and a beam  
1176 energy in between 8 and 9 TeV [7] directly followed in 1985 with the creation of a 'Working Group  
1177 on the Scientific and Technological Future of CERN' to investigate such a collider [8]. The decision  
1178 was finally taken almost 10 years later, in 1994, to construct the LHC in the LEP tunnel [9] and the  
1179 approval of the 4 main experiments that would take place at the 4 interaction points would come in  
1180 1997 [10] and 1998 [11]:

- 1181 • ALICE [12] has been designed in the purpose of studying quark-gluon plasma that is believed  
1182 to have been a state of matter that existed in the very first moment of the universe.
- 1183 • ATLAS [13] and CMS [14] are general purpose experiments that have been designed with  
1184 the goal of continuing the exploration of the Standard Model and investigate new physics.
- 1185 • LHCb [15] has been designed to investigate the preference of matter over antimatter in the  
1186 universe through the CP violation.

1187 These large scale experiments, as well as the full CERN accelerator complex, are displayed on  
1188 Figure 2.4. The LHC is a 27 km long hadron collider and the most powerful accelerator used for  
1189 particle physics since 2008 [16]. The LHC was originally designed to collide protons at a center-  
1190 of-mass energy of 14 TeV and luminosity of  $10^{34} \text{ cm}^{-2}\text{s}^{-1}$ , as well as  $Pb$  ions at a center-of-mass  
1191 energy of 2.8 TeV/A with a peak luminosity of  $10^{27} \text{ cm}^{-2}\text{s}^{-1}$ . Run 1 of LHC, when the center-of-  
1192 mass energy only was half of the nominal LHC energy, was enough for both CMS and ATLAS to

discover the Higgs boson [17] and for LHCb to discover pentaquarks [18] and confirm the existance of tetraquarks [19]. Nevertheless, after the Third Long Shutdown (LS3) (2024-2026), the accelerator will be in the so called High Luminosity LHC (HL-LHC) configuration [20], increasing its instantaneous luminosity to  $10^{35} \text{ cm}^{-2}\text{s}^{-1}$  for  $pp$  collisions and to  $4.5 \times 10^{27} \text{ cm}^{-2}\text{s}^{-1}$ , boosting the discovery potential of the LHC. The HL-LHC phase should last at least another 10 years depending on the breakthrough this machine would lead to. Already a new accelerating device, the FCC, as been proposed to prepare the future of high energy physics after the LHC.

### CERN's Accelerator Complex

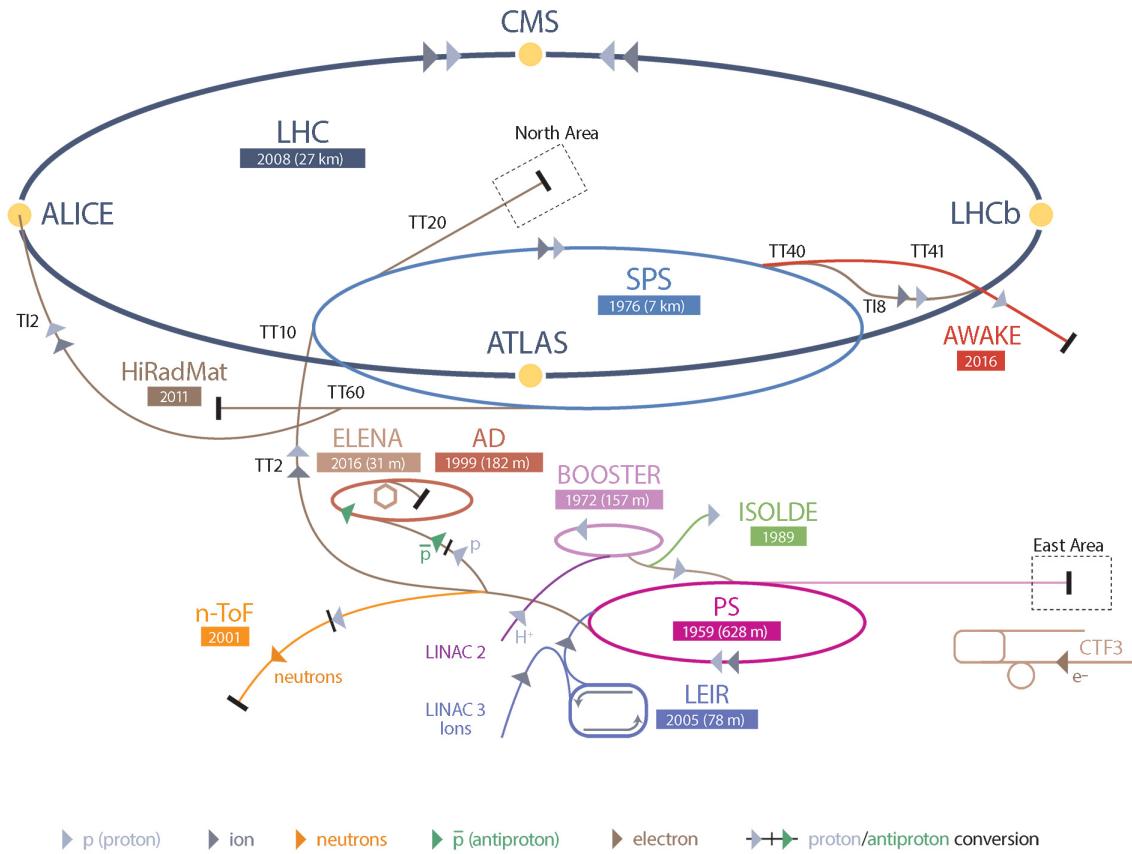


Figure 2.4: CERN accelerator complex.

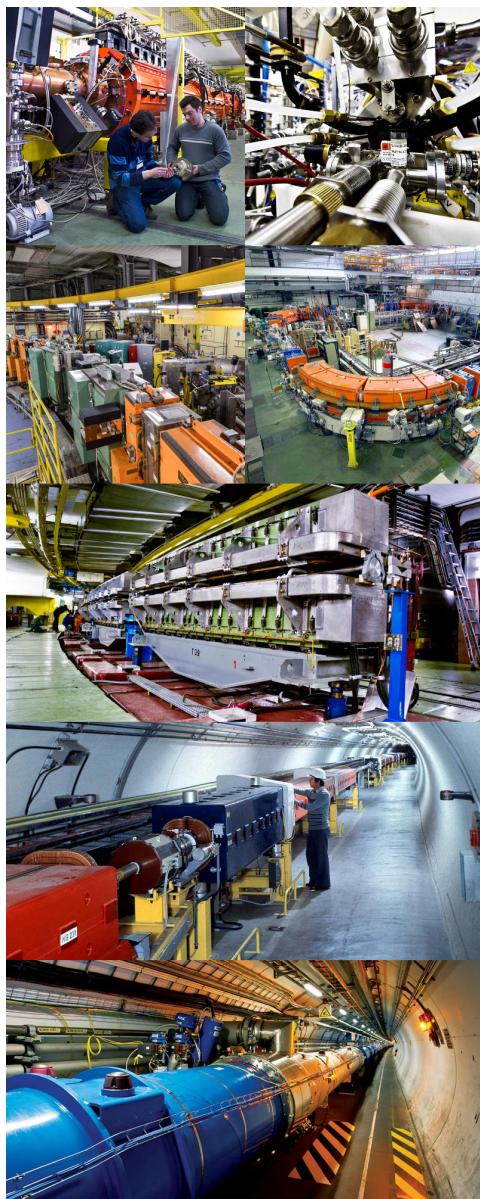
#### 2.2.1.1 Particle acceleration

The LHC is the last of a long series of accelerating devices. Before being accelerated by the LHC, the particles need to pass through different acceleration stages. All these acceleration stages are visible on Figure 2.4 and pictures of the accelerators are showed in Figure 2.5.

The story of accelerated protons at CERN starts with a bottle of hydrogen gas injected into the source chamber of the linear particle accelerator *LINAC 2* in which a strong electric field strips the

1207 electron off the hydrogen molecules only to keep their nuclei, the protons. The cylindrical conductors,  
 1208 alternatively positively or negatively charged by radiofrequency cavities, accelerate protons by  
 1209 pushing them from behind and pulling them from the front and ultimately give them an energy of  
 1210 50 MeV, increasing their mass by 5% in the process.

1211



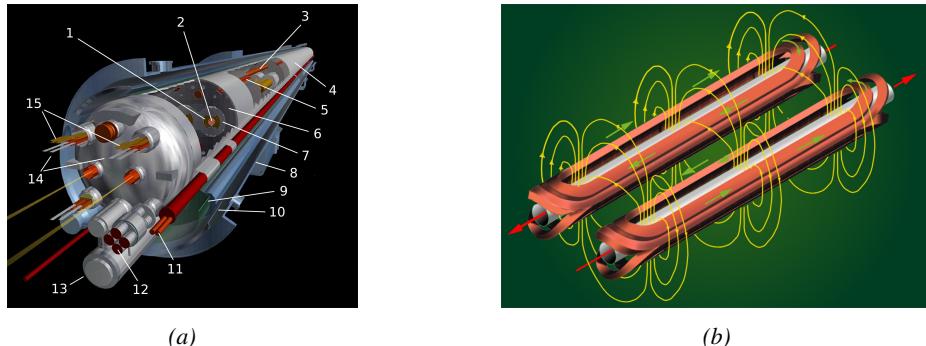
*Figure 2.5: Pictures of the different accelerators. From top to bottom: first the LINAC 2 and the Pb source of LINAC 3. Then the Booster and the LEIR. Finally, the PS, the SPS and the LHC.*

1212 When exiting the LINAC 2, the protons are divided into 4 bunches and injected into the 4 su-  
 1213 perimposed synchrotron rings of the *Booster* where they are then accelerated to reach an energy of

1.4 GeV before being injected into the PS. Before the Booster was operational in 1972, the protons were directly injected into the PS from the LINAC 2 but the low injection energy limited the amount of protons that could be accelerated at once by the PS. With the Booster, the PS accepts approximately 100 times more particles.

The 4 proton bunches are thus sent as one to the PS where their energy eventually reaches 26 GeV. Since the 70s, the main goal of this 628 m circumference synchrotron has been to supply other machines with accelerated particles. Nowadays, not only the PS accelerates protons, it also accelerates heavy ions from the *Low Energy Ion Ring (LEIR)*. Indeed, the LHC experiments are not only designed to study *pp*-collisions but also *Pb*-collisions. Lead is first injected into the dedicated linear collider *LINAC 3*, that accelerate the ions using the same principle than LINAC 2. Electrons are stripped off the lead ions all along the acceleration process and eventually, only bare nuclei are injected in the LEIR whose goal is to transform the long ion pulses received into short dense bunches for LHC. Ions injected and stored in the PS were accelerated by the LEIR from 4.2 MeV to 72 MeV.

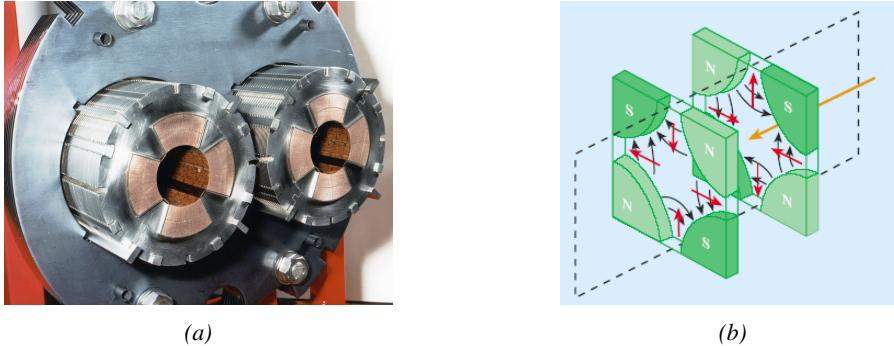
Directly following the PS, is finally the last acceleration stage before the LHC, the 7 km long SPS. The SPS accelerates the protons to 450 GeV and inject proton in both LHC accelerator rings that will increase their energy up to 7 TeV. When the LHC runs with heavy lead ions for ALICE and LHCb, ions are injected and accelerated to reach the energy of 2.8 TeV/A.



*Figure 2.6: Figure 2.6a: schematics of the LHC cryodipoles. 1: Superconducting Coils, 2: Beam pipe, 3: Heat exchanger Pipe, 4: Helium-II Vessel, 5: Superconducting Bus-bar, 6: Iron Yoke, 7: Non-Magnetic Collars, 8: Vacuum Vessel, 9: Radiation Screen, 10: Thermal Shield, 11: Auxiliary Bus-bar Tube, 12: Instrumentation Feed Throughs, 13: Protection Diode, 14: Quadrupole Bus-bars, 15: Spool Piece Bus-bars. Figure 2.6b: magnetic field and resulting motion force applied on the beam particles.*

The LHC beams are not continuous and are rather organised in bunch of particles. When in *pp*-collision mode, the beams are composed of 2808 bunches of  $1.15 \times 10^{11}$  protons separated by 25 ns. When in *Pb* collision mode, the 592 *Pb* bunches are on the contrary composed of  $2.2 \times 10^8$  ions separated by 100 ns. The two parallel proton beams of the LHC are contained in a single twin-bore magnet due to the space restriction in the LEP tunnel. Indeed, building 2 completely separate accelerator rings next to each other was impossible. The dipoles of the 1232 twin-bore magnets are showed in Figure 2.6 alongside the magnetic field generated along the dipole section to accelerate the particles. The dipoles generate a nominal field of 8.33 T, needed to give protons and lead nucleons their nominal energy. Some 392 quadrupoles, presented in Figure 2.7, are also used to focus to the

1243 beams, as well as other multipoles to correct smaller imperfections.



*Figure 2.7: Figure 2.7a: picture of the LHC quadrupoles. Figure 2.7b: magnetic fields and resulting focussing force applied on the beam by 2 consecutive quadrupoles.*

### 1244 2.2.2 CMS, a multipurpose experiment

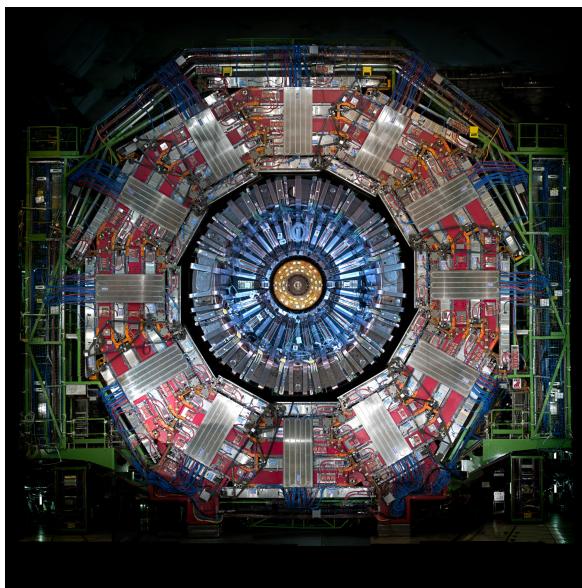
1245 Among the four main LHC experiments is the Compact Muon Solenoid used as a multipurpose tool to  
1246 investigate the SM and physics beyond its scope. Proposed through a letter of intention in 1992 [14],  
1247 and as its name suggests, this very compact detector's uses the muons as a clear tag of most of SM  
1248 and new physics interesting channels. In the original 1997 Technical Design Report (TDR) [21], the  
1249 very first sentences were stating that "*Muons are an unmistakable signature of most of the physics*  
1250 *LHC is designed to explore. The ability to trigger on and reconstruct muons at the highest luminosities is central to the concept of CMS, the Compact Muon Solenoid.*" CMS participated in the  
1251 discovery of the Higgs boson and the measurement of its properties and couplings together with  
1252 ATLAS and is also actively involved in the search for SUSY and heavy ion collisions. Other exotic  
1253 physics are also being investigated using the data collected by CMS.  
1254

1255 The CMS apparatus in itself is the heaviest detector ever built starring a SI15m diameter and a  
1256 29 m length for a total weight of 14 kT. A thick 4 T solenoid magnet located at the beam interaction  
1257 point hosts trackers and calorimeters. Extending in all directions around the magnet, heavy iron  
1258 return yokes are installed to extend the magnetic field and support a muon system. The apparatus  
1259 consists of a barrel, referring to the magnet and the detectors contained in it and the part of the muon  
1260 system built directly in the cylinder around the magnet, and of 2 endcaps in the forward and back-  
1261 ward region of the detector that closes the apparatus and complete the detection coverage along the  
1262 beam line. A front view on the barrel is provided in Figure 2.8 while a detailed view of the apparatus  
1263 is given in Figure 2.9.

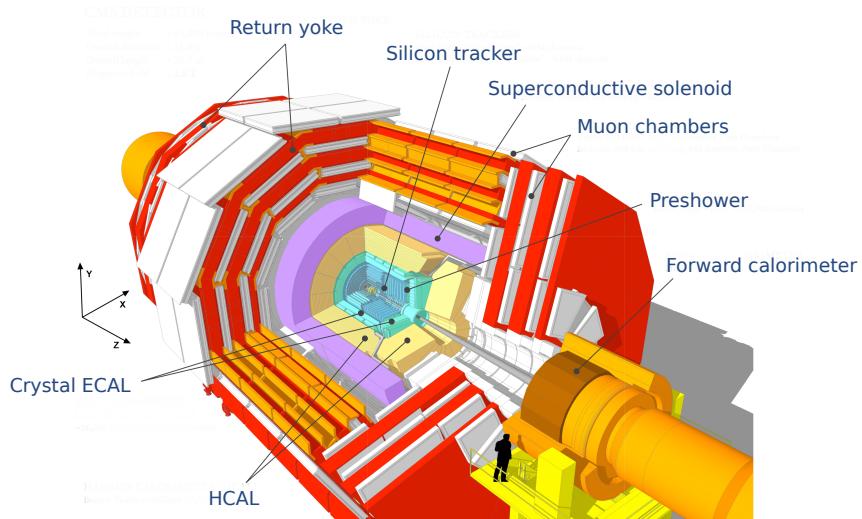
1264

1265 In order to efficiently detect all long leaving particles and measure their properties with good  
1266 precision, the CMS detector uses an onion like layout around of the interaction point in order to  
1267 maximize the covered solid angle. As detailed in Figure 2.10, in the innermost region of the detector,  
1268 closest to the interaction point, the silicon tracker records the trajectory of charged particles. Around  
1269 it, the electromagnetic calorimeter (ECAL) stops and measure the energy deposition of electrons  
1270 and photons. In the next layer, the hadron calorimeter (HCAL), hadrons are stopped and their energy  
1271 measured. These layers are contained inside of the magnet of CMS, the superconducting solenoid.  
1272 Outside of the magnet are the muon chambers embedded into iron return yokes used to control the

1273 magnetic field and gives muons, the only particles traveling completely through the whole detector, a  
 1274 double bending helping in reconstructing their energy and trajectory. Note that photons and neutral  
 1275 hadrons are differentiated from electrons and charged hadrons in the calorimeters by the fact that  
 1276 don't interact with the silicon tracker and that they are not influenced by the magnetic field.



*Figure 2.8: Picture of the CMS barrel. The red outer layer is the muon system hosted into the red iron return yokes. The calorimeters are the blue cylinder inside in magnet solenoid and the tracker is the inner yellow cylinder built around the beam pipe.*



*Figure 2.9: View of the CMS apparatus and of its different components.*

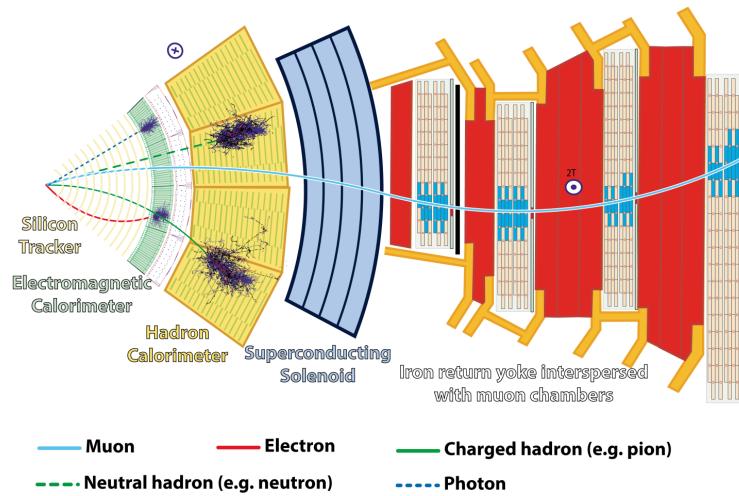


Figure 2.10: Slice showing CMS sub-detectors and how particles interact with them.

### 2.2.2.1 The silicon tracker, core of CMS

The silicon tracker visible on Figure 2.11 is divided into 2 different sub-systems: the *pixel detector* at the very core and the *microstrip detector* around it. This system is composed of 75 million individual readout channels with up to 6000 channels per squared centimeter for the pixels making it the world's biggest silicon detector. This density allows for measurements of the particle tracks with a precision of the order of  $10\ \mu\text{m}$ . This is necessary to reconstruct all the different interaction vertices with precision and have a precise measure of the curvature of the charged particles traveling through the magnetic field to estimate their charge and momentum.

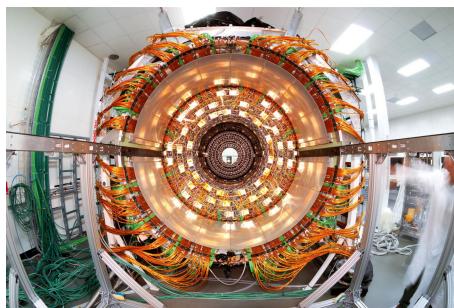
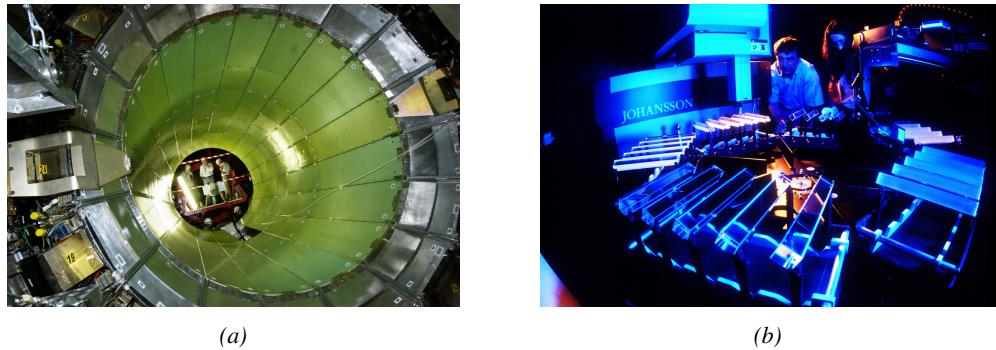


Figure 2.11: CMS tracker.

### 2.2.2.2 The calorimeters, measurement of particle's energy

The ECAL directly surrounding the tracker is composed of crystals of lead tungstate,  $\text{PbWO}_4$ , a very dense but optically transparent material used to stop high energy electrons and photons. These crystal blocks basically are extremely dense scintillators which scintillate in fast, short light bursts proportionally to the energy deposition. The light is yielded rapidly and contained at 80% in the corresponding 25 ns lasting bunch crossing. Each crystal is isolated from the other by the carbon fiber matrix they are embedded in. It is composed of a barrel containing more than 60,000 crystals

1292 and of closing endcaps containing another 15,000 crystals. In front of the ECAL endcap is installed  
 1293 a preshower detector made out of two layers of lead and silicon strip detectors to increase the spatial  
 1294 resolution close to the beam line for pion-photon and single-double photon discrimination purposes.  
 1295 Figure 2.12 shows the calorimeter inside of the magnet and the crystals.



*Figure 2.12: Figure 2.12a: picture of the ECAL. Figure 2.12b: picture of the lead tungstate crystals composing the ECAL.*

1296 The next layer is the HCAL measuring the hadrons momentum and providing indirect hints of  
 1297 non interacting neutral particles, such as neutrinos, as missing transverse momentum. Several layers  
 1298 of brass or steel are interleaved with plastic scintillators readout by photodiodes using wavelength-  
 1299 shifting fibers. The HCAL is also composed of a barrel, showed in Figure 2.13 and of endcaps. It  
 1300 also features forward calorimeters on both sides of CMS in the region very close to the beam line at  
 1301 high pseudorapidity ( $3.0 < |\eta| < 5.0$ ). The role of these forward calorimeters, made using steel and  
 1302 quartz fibers, is to measure very energetic hadrons.



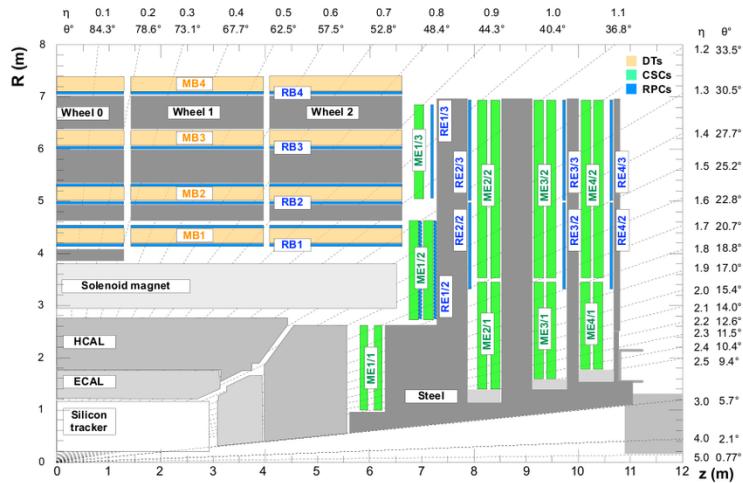
*Figure 2.13: CMS hadron calorimeter barrel.*

1303 Finally, in the outer region of the apparatus, a muon system is used to trigger on potentially  
 1304 interesting event by identifying muons. Indeed, the muon system is a very important part of the  
 1305 CMS trigger infrastructure designed to efficiently select data from the enormous data flow received  
 1306 by the detectors as the LHC delivers collisions at a rate of 40 MHz with a pile-ip of 20 to 30 collisions  
 1307 per bunch crossing during Phase-I and up to 200 during Phase-II, representing billions of interactions  
 1308 per second among which a large quantity are low energy collisions that are not likely to produce new  
 1309 reactions, and which is physically impossible for nowadays technologies to cope with. Working at  
 1310 a maximum rate of 100 kHz, the trigger system is able to select the 100,000 more interesting events

1311 by looking at the energy distribution of the interaction products and clear signatures like muons  
 1312 reconstructed by the muon system. the vast majority of these events will not finally be stored after  
 1313 physics tests are applied.

### 1314 2.2.2.3 The muon system, corner stone of CMS

1315 The challenge for the muon system is to provide a robust and fast measurement of muons. Three  
 1316 different subsystems, and soon 4 after LS2, compose the muon system as showed in Figure 2.14 in  
 1317 which a quadrant of the CMS detector focused on muon system. Drift Tube (DT) are found in the  
 1318 barrel region covering the low pseudorapidity region where particles transverse momentum is lower  
 1319 and Cathode Strip Chamber (CSC) are found in the endcap region covering higher pseudorapidity  
 1320 region closer to beam line where particles have a stronger momentum. The redundancy of the system  
 1321 is insured by Resistive Plate Chamber (RPC) in both the barrel and endcap region. Nevertheless, the  
 1322 region closest to the beam line ( $|\eta| > 1.8$ ) was not equipped with RPCs. This lack of redundancy  
 1323 in the high pseudo rapidity region will be solved during LS2, the following Year End Technical  
 1324 Stop (YETS) in 2021 and 2022, and LS3 where the necessary services, detectors and Link System,  
 1325 that collects the data and synchronizes them, will be installed.

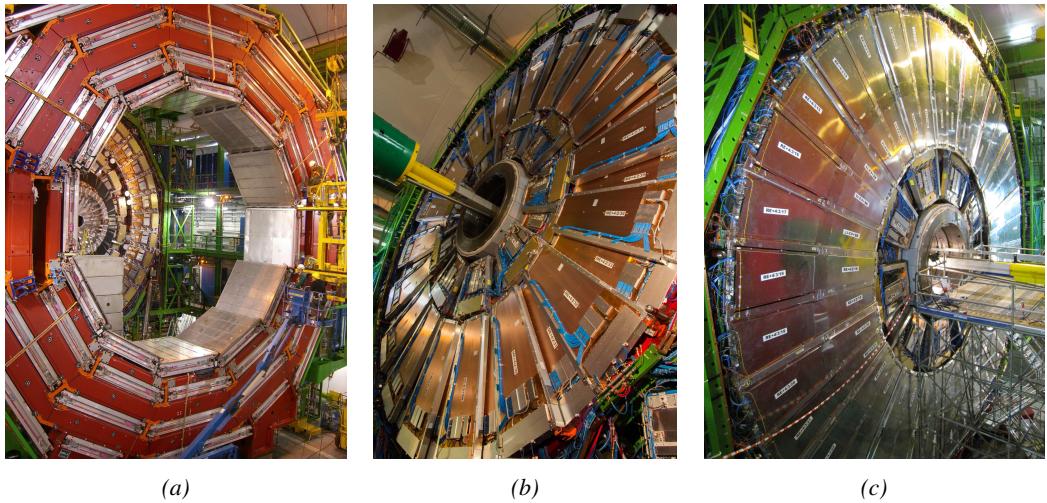


1326 *Figure 2.14: A quadrant of the muon system, showing DTs (yellow), RPCs (blue), and CSCs (green).*

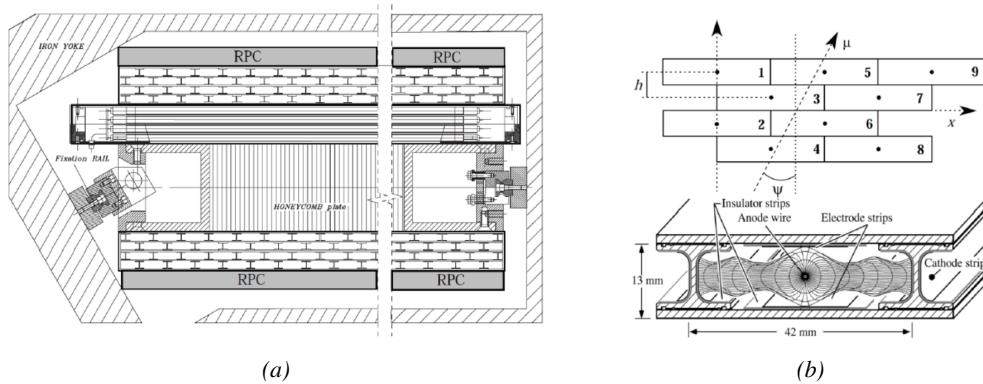
1327 The barrel region is divided into 5 *wheels* made out of 4 *rings* of detectors with iron return yokes  
 1328 in between them whereas the endcaps are made out of 4 disks, each divided into pseudorapidity  
 1329 stations, 2 for CSCs (except for the first disk where 3 stations are equipped) and 3 for RPCs, although  
 1330 only 2 RPCs stations are equipped at present. The wheels and disks are showed in Figure 2.15. So  
 1331 far, each subsystem was dedicated to a particular task. DTs, in the barrel, and CSCs, in the endcaps,  
 1332 are used mainly for their spatial resolution. Indeed, DTs' resolution is of the order of 100 μm along  
 1333 both the  $(r - \phi)$  and  $(r - z)$  components while the resolution of CSCs is similar but varies in a range  
 1334 from 50 μm to 140 μm depending on the distance to the beamline. On the other hand, RPCs are used  
 1335 for their time resolution as they can deliver an information on the muon tracks within 1.5 ns.

1336 The 250 CMS DTs, found in the barrel covering the pseudorapidity region  $0 < |\eta| < 1.2$   
 1337 and whose structure is shown in Figure 2.16, are composed of 3 *superlayers* of DT cells. Two of  
 these superlayers are dedicated to measuring the  $\phi$  coordinate of the muons and while the last one

measures the  $\eta$  (or  $z$ ) coordinate. Each superlayer consists on 4 layers of 60 to 70 DT cells arranged in quincunx to allow for a precise reconstruction of the muon path through the DT layers. Each DT cell is a rectangular aluminium gas volume with a central anode wire. Cathode strips are placed on the narrow surface of the cells and electrode strips are placed on the wide surface to help shaping the electric field to ensure a consistent drift velocity of electrons in the drift volume. These detectors are operated using a 85/15 mixture of  $Ar$  and  $CO_2$ .



*Figure 2.15: Figure 2.15a: Barrel wheel with its detector rings and return yokes. Figure 2.15b: CSC endcap disk with the 2 CSC stations. The outer station is made of 10 deg detectors while the inner station is made of 20 deg detectors. Figure 2.15c: RPC endcap disk. The inner station is not equipped and the inner CSC station can be seen.*



*Figure 2.16: Figure 2.16a: Cross section of a DT module showing the two superlayers measuring the  $\phi$  coordinate, perpendicular to the cross section plane, and the superlayer measuring the  $\eta$  coordinate, placed in between the two others with honeycomb and parallel to the cross section plane. The DT detector is sandwiched in between 2 RPCs whose readout strips are perpendicular to the cross section plane, measuring the  $\phi$  coordinate. Figure 2.16b: A DT cell is shown together with its electric field. The path of a muon through a superlayer is shown.*

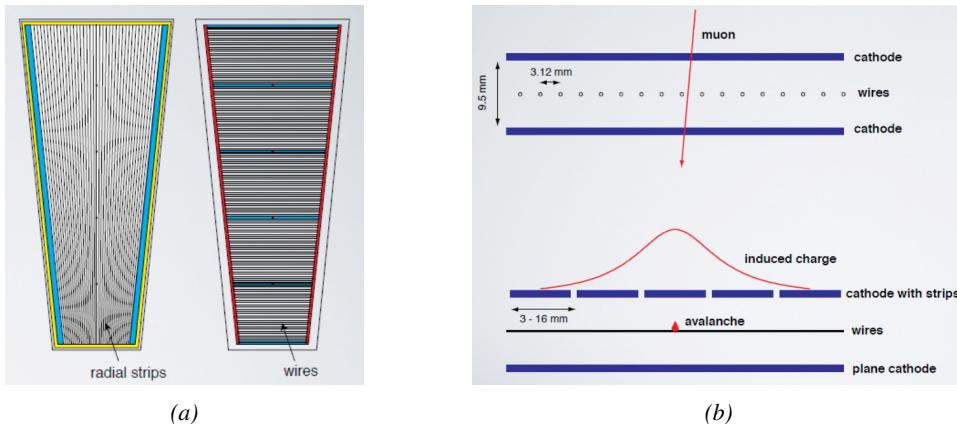


Figure 2.17: Figure 2.17a: cathode strips and anode wire layout of a CSC panel. Figure 2.17b avalanche development and charge collection by anode wires and induction on cathode strips inside of a CSC panel.

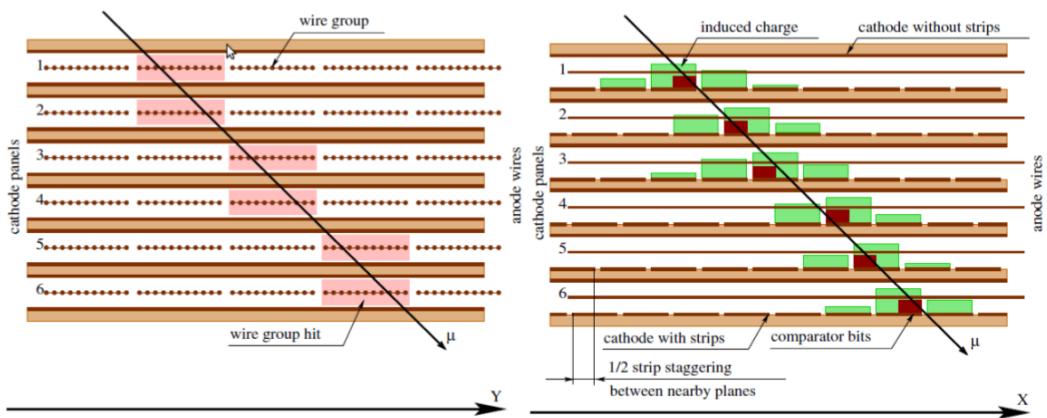


Figure 2.18: Muon track reconstruction through the 6 panels of a CMS CSC using the information of anode wire groups and cathode strip charge distribution combined with comparator bits to decide on which half strip the muon is more likely to have passed.

1344 The 540 CMS CSCs, found in the endcaps covering the pseudorapidity region  $0.9 < |\eta| < 2.5$   
 1345 and described through Figure 2.17, are composed of 6 panels of CSC, each panel consisting in  
 1346 a wide gas volume of 9.5 mm (7 mm in the case of ME1/1 station) containing anode wires and  
 1347 whose surfaces are cathodes. The top cathode is a wide copper plane of the size of the gas volume.  
 1348 The bottom cathode is divided into thin trapezoidal copper strips radially arranged to measure the  
 1349 azimuthal coordinate  $\phi$  with a pitch ranging from 8 to 16 mm. The  $0.50 \mu\text{m}$  anode wires are placed  
 1350 perpendicularly to the strips to measure radial coordinate  $r$  and are grouped by 10 to 15 with a wire  
 1351 to wire space of 3.2 mm. In the specific case of ME1/1 placed against the HCAL endcap, the  $0.30 \mu\text{m}$   
 1352 anode wires have a wire to wire distance of 2.5 mm and are not disposed perpendicularly to the strips  
 1353 but slightly tilted by an angle of 29 deg to compensate for the lorentz force due to the very strong  
 1354 local magnetic field of 4 T. These detectors are operated with a 40/50/10 mixture of Ar, CO<sub>2</sub> and  
 1355 CF<sub>4</sub>. Combining the information of the multiple CSC panels, the detectors achieve a very precise  
 1356 measurement of the muon track.

Despite their excellent spatial resolution, the wire chambers (DTs and CSCs) are limited in terms of time resolution by the fact that the charge needs to drift towards the anode wire and be collected before having the confirmation that a particle was detected as the drift volume is not used to develop avalanches. Indeed, the stronger electric field close to the anode wire triggers the avalanche and the gain of the detector. Due to the drift, the time resolution is thus limited at best to approximately 2 to 3 ns. In addition, even though the intrinsic time resolution of the tracking chambers is rather good compared to the 25 ns in between successive collisions, the processing time of the trigger system doesn't allow for very fast triggering as it provides a time precision of only 12.5 ns. Thus, detectors fully dedicated to timing measurement have been installed as a redundant system. These detectors are RPCs, also gaseous detectors but that use current induction instead of charge collection allowing for a time resolution of the order of 1.5 ns only. Theoretically, depending on the design used, RPCs could reach a time resolution of the order of 10 ps but in the context of LHC where bunch crossing happen every 25 ns, a time resolution of 1.5 ns is sufficient to accurately assign the right bunch crossing to each detected muon.

The 1056 RPCs equipping the CMS muon system both in the barrel and endcap regions and covering the pseudorapidity region  $0 < |\eta| < 1.6$  are composed of two layers of RPC *gaps* as described in Figure 2.19. Each gap consists in two resistive electrodes made out of 2 mm thick Bakelite enclosing a 2 mm thick gas volume containing a 95.2/4.5/0.3 mixture of  $C_2H_2F_4$ ,  $i - C_4H_{10}$  and  $SF_6$ . Due to this geometry, the electric field inside of a gap is homogeneous and linear at every point in the gas translating into a uniform development of avalanches in the gas volume as soon as a passing muon ionises the gas. The two gaps sandwich a readout copper strip plane. A negative voltage is applied on the outer electrodes, used as cathodes, and the inner electrodes, the anodes, are simply connected to the ground as well as the readout panel that picks up the current induced by the accumulated charge of the growing avalanches in one or both of the gas gaps. This OR system allows for a lower gain (i.e. a lower electric field) on both gaps to reach the maximal efficiency of such a detector.

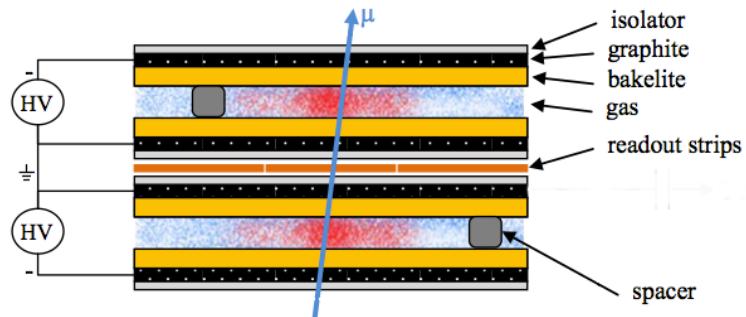


Figure 2.19: Double gap layout of CMS RPCs. Muons passing through the gas volumes will create electron-ion pairs by ionising the gas. this ionisation will immediately translate into a developing avalanche.



# 3

1383

1384

## Muon Phase-II Upgrade

1385 The very first proton beam successfully circulated in the LHC in September 2008 directly followed  
1386 by an incident leading to mechanical damage that would delay the LHC program for a year until  
1387 November 2009, the very first collisions at a center-of-mass energy of 7 TeV taking place in March  
1388 2010. The energy of the beam would be increased after a First Long Shutdown (LS1) starting early  
1389 2013 after less than 3 years of data taking. Nevertheless, this first data taking period at only 7 TeV  
1390 was sufficient to claim the discovery of a new particle compatible with the Higgs boson in July 2012.  
1391 During the 2 years of shutdown, the upgrade of the accelerator allowed for several maintainances  
1392 along the beam pipes, repair and consolidation of magnet connection and high-current splices. But  
1393 not only the LHC was upgraded. Indeed, the experiments at the 4 collision points also took the  
1394 advantage of this time to upgrade their system in prevision of the next LHC run (Run-II) until  
1395 2018 and the Second Long Shutdown (LS2) as the luminosity and energy of the beam would be  
1396 continuously increasing. By the end of Run-II, the luminosity will have reached twice its nominal  
1397 value when the center-of-mass energy has already got close to its nominal value by reaching an  
1398 historical 13 TeV for the first time in 2017.

1399 The next long shutdown will occur at the end of this year and will again be the occasion for sim-  
1400 ilar maintenance and consolidation in prevision of Run-III and the future upgrade of LS3. Still, the  
1401 main occupation of LS2 on LHC side will be the upgrade of LHC injectors. On the experiments side,  
1402 LHCb and ALICE will, in a very tight schedule, implement major upgrades while ATLAS and CMS  
1403 will wait until LS3 to upgrade their detectors in prevision of high luminosity *LHC-Phase-II*. ALICE  
1404 main challenge is an upgrade of their apparatus to cope with the 50 kHz  $Pb - Pb$  collisions. Simi-  
1405 larly, LHCb will upgrade their frontend readout electronics to cope with the full 40 MHz collisions  
1406 delivered by LHC. ATLAS will perform standard maintenance and CMS will focus on the urgent up-  
1407 grade of the pixel detector and on the installation of new muon detectors in order to take profit of LS2  
1408 time to mitigate the upgrade of detectors foreseen during LS3. Run-III will start in 2021 with the LHC  
1409 at its nominal center-of-mass energy and will bring LHC-Phase-I to an end at the end of 2023. By  
1410 then the luminosity will only increase to reach 2.5 times the nominal luminosity but during these 3  
1411 years of run, the LHC will deliver as much integrated luminosity as what what brought during the al-

1412 most 7 years of both Run-I and II of data taking. Phase-I will end with an overall  $300 \text{ fb}^{-1}$  delivered.  
 1413

### 1414 3.1 High Luminosity LHC and muon system requirements

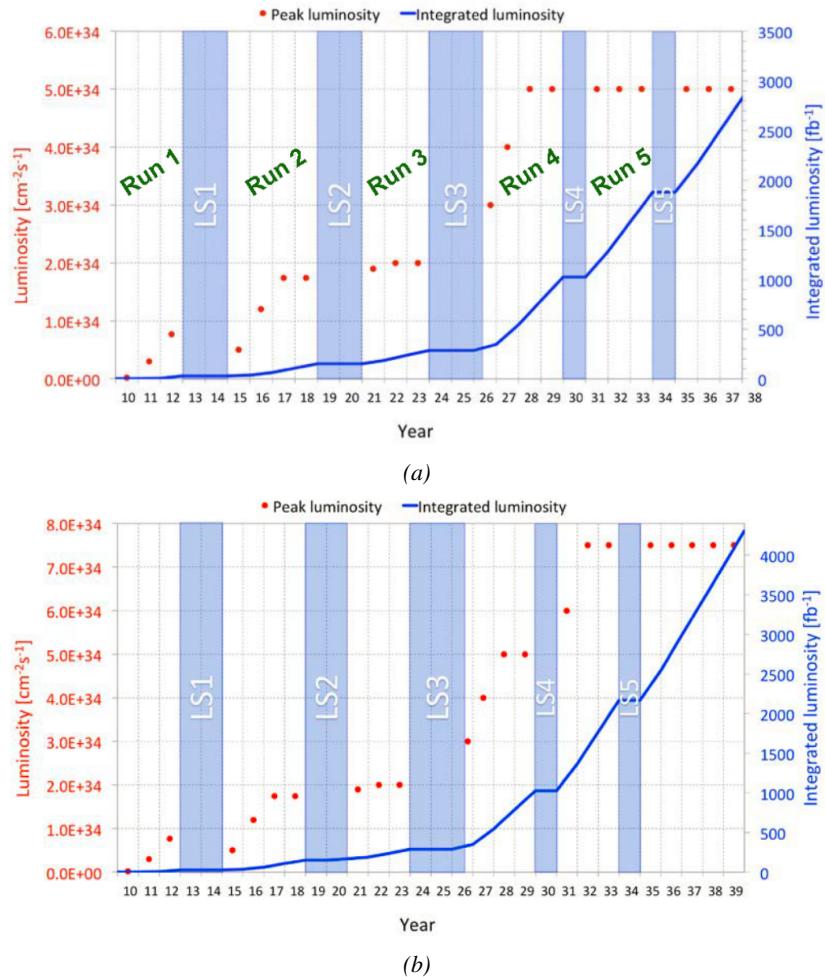


Figure 3.1: Detailed timeline projection of for LHC and HL-LHC operation until 2039 showing the evolution of the instantaneous and integrated luminosity as designed (Figure 3.1a) and in the ultimate case where the instantaneous luminosity is increased to  $7.5 \times 10^{34} \text{ cm}^{-2}\text{s}^{-1}$  (Figure 3.1b) [20, 22].

1415 After approximately 15 years of operation, the LHC will undergo a new series of upgrade during  
 1416 the LS3 in order to boost its discovery potential as showed in Figure 3.1. This moment onward is  
 1417 what is referred to HL-LHC or Phase-II. The goal is to aim for a luminosity 5 to 7 times stronger  
 1418 than the nominal one trying to reach even 10 times this value if possible. Increasing the luminosity  
 1419 means that the beam size at the collision points needs to be reduced to boost the number of collisions  
 1420 per bunch crossing. For this purpose, new focusing and bending magnets, and collimators will be  
 1421 installed at the collision points as well as newly developed "crab cavities" that will tilt the particle

1422 bunched just prior to the collisions by giving them transverse momentum and thus increasing their  
 1423 meeting area. In addition, the full proton injection line will be upgraded.

1424 Over its full lifetime, the HL-LHC is expected to deliver an outstanding integrated luminosity of  
 1425  $3000 \text{ fb}^{-1}$  leading, in the case of Higgs studies to measuring the couplings of the boson to a precision  
 1426 of 2 to 5% thanks to the estimated 15 millions of Higgs created every year providing a more precise  
 1427 measurement of potential deviations from the theoretical predictions. SUSY and heavy gauge boson  
 1428 studies would also see their mass range limits pushed away by at least 1 TeV and could lead to a new  
 1429 breakthrough. SUSY is a particularly important topic as it could give an answer to why the Higgs  
 1430 boson can stay so light while coupled to heavy particles by introducing the contributions of the super  
 1431 partners on top of providing dark matter candidates. Finally, the increase of luminosity will give the  
 1432 possibility to investigate "exotic" mode like for example the models introducing extra dimensions to  
 1433 explain the hierarchy problem.

1434 On the experiments side, the pile-up (PU) will be increased up to 150 to 200 interactions per  
 1435 bunch crossing in ATLAS and CMS, making necessary an strong upgrade of the trigger system and  
 1436 of the inner trackers and of the calorimeters. Both ATLAS and CMS will also need to upgrade  
 1437 the muon trigger at the level of the endcaps mainly focusing on the coverage near the beam line in  
 1438 order to increase the detection acceptance and event selection. Moreover, the increased luminosity  
 1439 will also lead to an increased background rate and a faster ageing of the detectors. This PhD work  
 1440 takes place into this very specific context of muon detector consolidation and certification for the  
 1441 HL-LHC period in order to provide the CMS experiment with robust new detectors and confirm that  
 1442 the present system will survive through the next 20 years of HL-LHC.

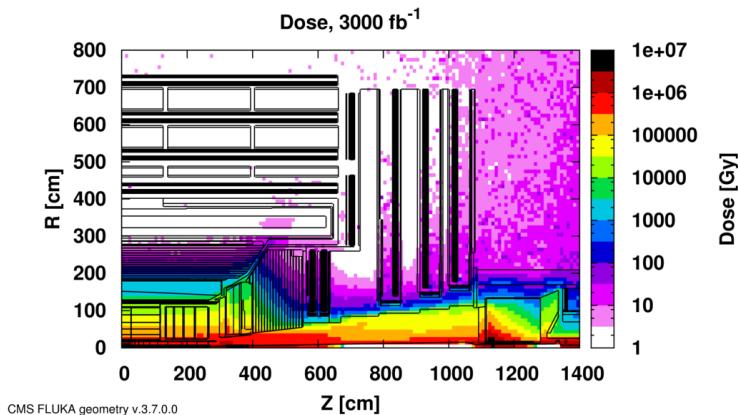
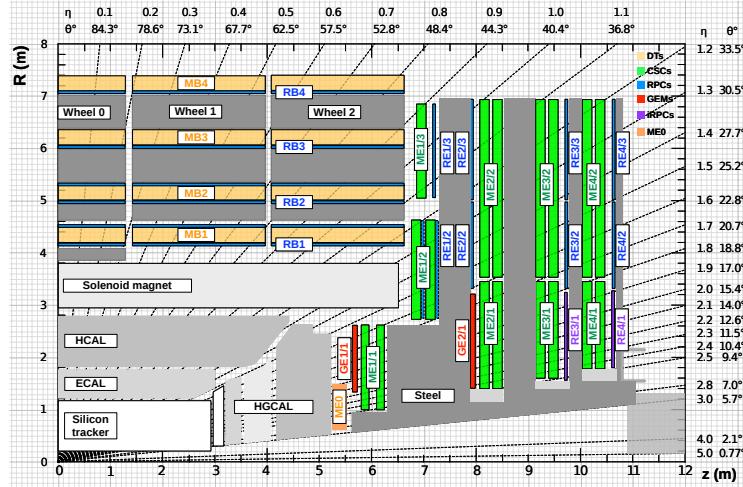


Figure 3.2: Absorbed dose in the CMS cavern after an integrated luminosity of  $3000 \text{ fb}$ . Using the interaction point as reference,  $R$  is the transverse distance from the beamline and  $Z$  is the distance along the beamline.

1443 The end of 2018 will mark the beginning of LS2 and the start of Phase-II upgrade activities.  
 1444 From the HL-LHC period onwards, i.e. past LS3, the performance degradation due to integrated  
 1445 radiation as well as the average number of inelastic collisions per bunch crossing, seen as pile-up  
 1446 into the detectors' readout that far exceeds this of the original LHC plans, will rise substantially and  
 1447 become a major challenge for all of the LHC experiments, like CMS, that were forced to address  
 1448 an upgrade program for Phase-II [23]. Dealing with the data from the muon detectors will force  
 1449 to upgrade the detectors and electronics towards the most recent technologies. Simultaneously, this  
 1450 will push new latency requirements onto the Level-1 trigger and the Data Acquisition (DAQ) that

will only be fulfilled by upgrading the system with electronics having deeper buffering and faster processing. Simulations of the expected distribution of absorbed dose in the CMS detector under HL-LHC conditions show, in Figure 3.2, that detectors placed close to the beam line will have to withstand high irradiation, the radiation dose being of the order of a few tens of Gy.



*Figure 3.3: A quadrant of the muon system, showing DTs (yellow), RPCs (blue), and CSCs (green). The locations of new forward muon detectors for Phase-II are contained within the dashed box and indicated in red for GEM stations (ME0, GE1/1, and GE2/1) and dark blue for improved RPC (iRPC) stations (RE3/1 and RE4/1).*

The increase of irradiation close to the beam line will affect the background rate seen by the muon detectors in this area and tracking muons will prove to be difficult as this region is not yet equipped with all the detectors that were already foreseen for Phase-I. Improving this situation will come with the increase of hit numbers recorded along the particle track to reduce the ambiguity on muon versus background detection. Moreover, the measurement of small production cross-section and/or decay branching ratio processes, such as the Higgs boson coupling to charge leptons, and in particular to muons, or the  $B_s \rightarrow \mu^+ \mu^-$  decay, is of major interest and specific upgrades in the forward regions of the detector will be required to maximize the physics acceptance to the largest possible solid angle.

To ensure proper trigger performance within the present coverage, the muon system will be completed with new chambers and the electronics of the present system will need to be upgraded to ensure an efficient triggering. Figure 3.3 shows the addition of Gas Electron Multiplier (GEM) and improved RPC (iRPC) in the pseudo-rapidity region  $1.6 < |\eta| < 2.4$  to complete the redundancy of the already existing CSCs as originally scheduled in the CMS Technical Proposal [24]. A first step into this direction will be taken by installing GEMs on the first endcap disk in position GE1/1 during LS2, during which preparations for the future installation of more GEMs and RPCs will take place by installing the needed services. During the YETS following LS2, iRPCs will be installed on the third and fourth endcap disks in position RE3/1 and RE4/1, and more GEMs will equip the second endcap in position GE2/1 and the inner layer, closest to the HCAL endcap called ME0 during LS3, finally completing the redundant coverage of the muon system and extending it a little by extending the reach to  $|\eta| = 2.8$ , the redundancy in the region  $2.4 < |\eta| < 2.8$  being maintained by the 6 GEM layers contained in each ME0 detector that provide enough tracking points to efficiently reject

<sup>1477</sup> neutron-induced background.

<sup>1478</sup> Nevertheless, the region beyond  $|\eta| > 2.8$  and extending to  $|\eta| = 5.0$  only is covered by the  
<sup>1479</sup> forward HCAL detectors and lack redundant muon detector coverage. Extensions of the tracker in  
<sup>1480</sup> the context of HL-LHC will increase its coverage up to  $|\eta| = 4.0$  but the identification of muons and  
<sup>1481</sup> measurement of their energy with reasonable precision only using the tracker is nearly impossible.  
<sup>1482</sup> Thus, this increased tracker coverage range needs to be put in parallel with a matching muon detector  
<sup>1483</sup> and will open doors to multi-lepton final states in which leptons are likely to have a low transverse  
<sup>1484</sup> momentum and to be found near the beam line.

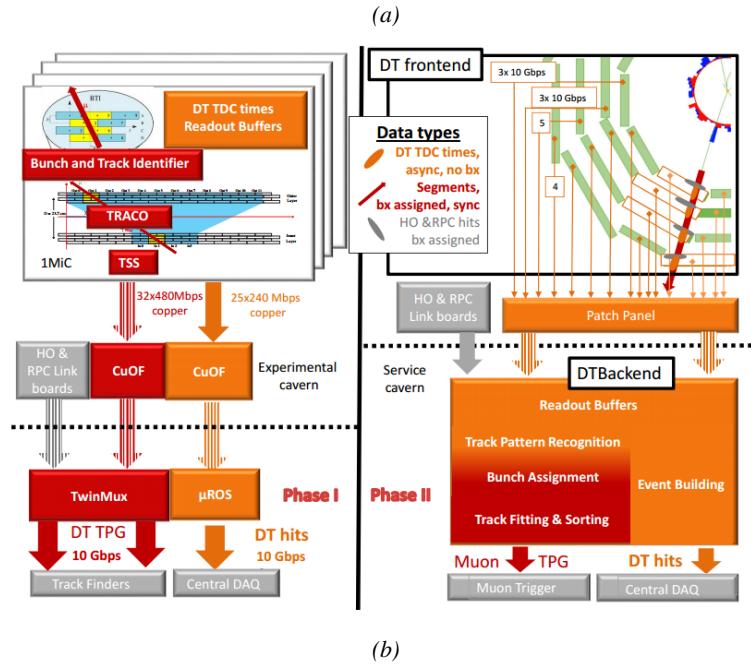
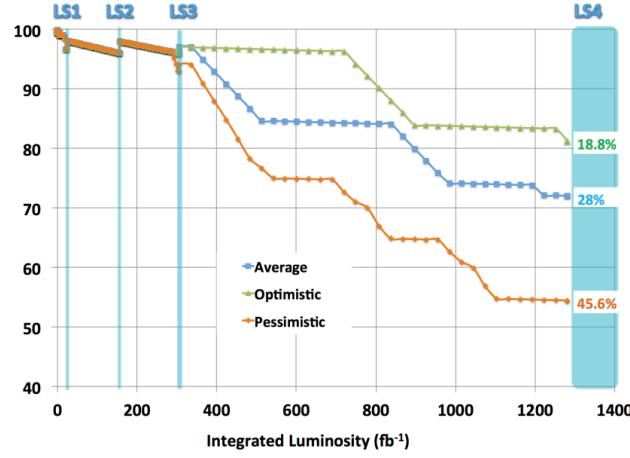
<sup>1485</sup>

<sup>1486</sup> Finally, as the muon system is composed only of gaseous detectors, strong environmental concerns  
<sup>1487</sup> have risen over the last years as the European directives will restrict the use of fluorine based  
<sup>1488</sup> gas mixtures. Both the CSC and RPC subsystems, using  $CF_4$ ,  $C_2H_2F_4$ , or  $SF_6$ , will need to adapt  
<sup>1489</sup> their working gas in order to strongly reduce the greenhouse potential of the mixtures released into  
<sup>1490</sup> the atmosphere due to gas leaks.

## <sup>1491</sup> 3.2 Necessity for improved electronics

<sup>1492</sup> Drift Tubes and Cathode Strip Chambers are important components used to identify and measure  
<sup>1493</sup> muons, especially thanks to their spatial resolution of the order of  $100\text{ }\mu\text{m}$ . Nevertheless, the luminosity  
<sup>1494</sup> and irradiation during HL-LHC will cause serious event loss and ageing on the electronics of  
<sup>1495</sup> these subsystems that will comprise the triggering and data transferring needs of CMS. Thus, elec-  
<sup>1496</sup> tronics upgrade are foreseen to address these expected problems. While only the RPCs' electronic  
<sup>1497</sup> system is able to operate under Phase-II requirements, DTs and CSCs will need to improve their  
<sup>1498</sup> trigger accept rate and latency to ensure that Level-1 trigger threshold stays at the same level [25],  
<sup>1499</sup> and DAQ data transfer rate, that respectively need to achieve a minimum of  $500\text{ kHz}$ , get down to  
<sup>1500</sup>  $12.5\text{ }\mu\text{s}$  [26], and increase to  $1082\text{ Gbit/s}$  DTs and to  $1026\text{ Gbit/s}$  for CSCs. As of today, the Level-  
<sup>1501</sup> 1 trigger accept rate of DTs doesn't reach  $300\text{ kHz}$  while this of CSCs is below  $250\text{ kHz}$  but the  
<sup>1502</sup> foreseen upgrades are expected to increase the rate way beyond the requirement in the of DTs and  
<sup>1503</sup> up to  $4\text{ MHz}$  for CSCs [23].

<sup>1504</sup> The first version of Minicrate electronics (MiC1) used by DTs don't allow for high enough  
<sup>1505</sup> trigger rate. In addition to this problem, it was showed that these electronics contain components  
<sup>1506</sup> that are not radiation hard enough to sustain HL-LHC conditions and thus, a too large number of  
<sup>1507</sup> channels may fail due to radiations. Considering the most optimistic scenario, at least 19% of the  
<sup>1508</sup> channels could have failed by LS4, as explicitated in Figure 3.4, far before the end of the HL-LHC  
<sup>1509</sup> campain. The MiC1 will be replaced on each detector by an improved version referred to as MiC2  
<sup>1510</sup> while front-end electronics and high-voltage modules will not need any replacement. On the other  
<sup>1511</sup> hand, CSCs showed that there electronics would be able to live through the 10 years of Phase-II but  
<sup>1512</sup> the limited buffer depth might cause memory overflows and readout inefficiencies with a fraction  
<sup>1513</sup> of event loss ranging from 5 to more than 10% at an instantaneous luminosity similar to which of  
<sup>1514</sup> HL-LHC depending on the expected background, as showed on Figure 3.5 through the different  
<sup>1515</sup> detector positions. Thus the replacement of CSCs' cathode front-end boards (CFEBs) by digital  
<sup>1516</sup> ones, DCFEBs, with deeper buffer would permit to make event loss negligible and satisfy HL-LHC  
<sup>1517</sup> requirements [23].



*Figure 3.4: Figure 3.4a: Extrapolated fraction of failing channels of the present DT MiC1 electronics as a function of the integrated luminosity for different scenari until LS4. Figure 3.4b: Comparison of the current (left) and upgraded (right) DT data processing. So far, the data is sent to service cavern of CMS facility via copper-to-optical-fiber translators (CuOF) by each MiC1. There, data including RPCs and outer hadron calorimeter is combined into trigger primitives (TPG) and transmitted by the TwinMux system to CMS Track Finder. The time-to-digital converter (TDC) data is collected and sent to the CMS data acquisition system (DAQ) by the micro read-out server ( $\mu$ ROS). After the upgrade, the TDC data will be sent via optical links to a patch panel inside the experimental cavern by each MiC2, and transferred to the back-end, where triggering and event building will be performed.*

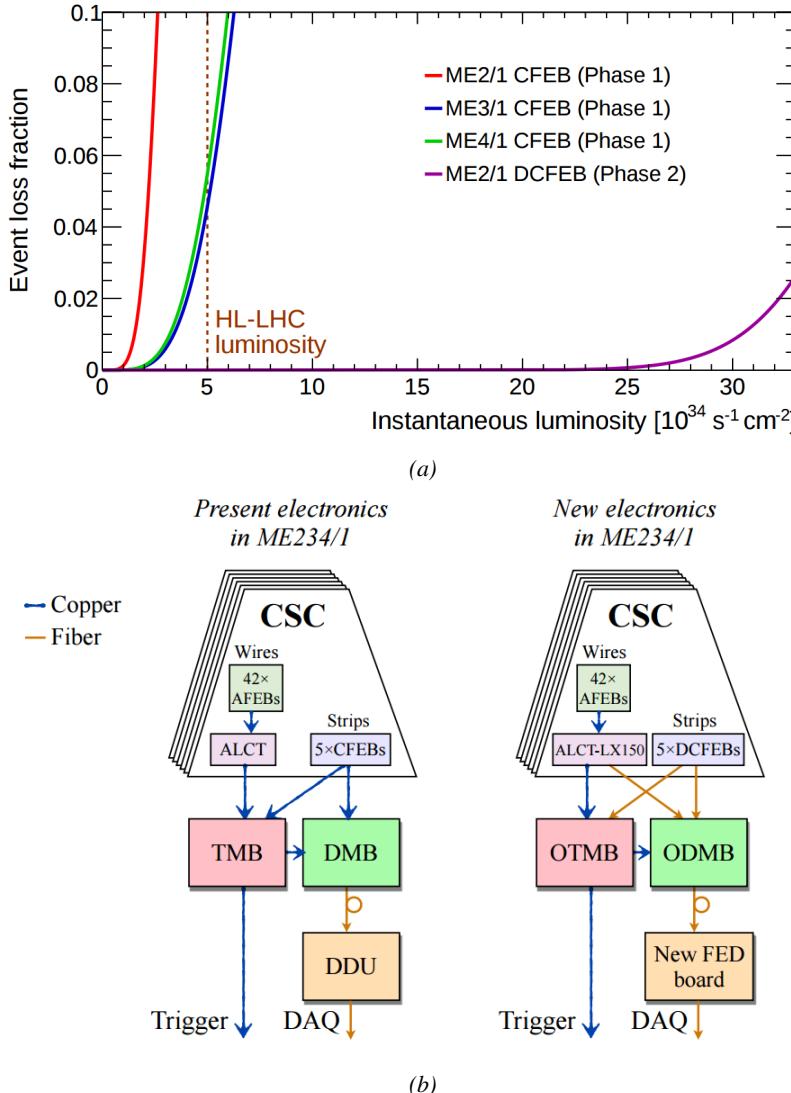


Figure 3.5: Figure 3.5a: The event loss fractions as a function of the instantaneous luminosity is compared for CFEBs (Phase-1) and DCFEBs (Phase-II) at different CSC locations. HL-LHC luminosity is marked with the dashed brown line. Figure 3.5b: Comparison of the current (left) and upgraded (right) CSC data processing. A part of the connections in between ALCTs and DCFEBs, and the trigger mother boards (TMBs) and data acquisition mother boards (DMBs) will be upgraded toward optical data transfer. The detector dependent units (DDUs) used as interface in between CSCs' front-end electronics and the CMS DAQ will be replaced by new FED boards.

1518 All these new DT and CSC electronics will be connected to the trigger electronics via optical  
 1519 links to ensure a faster communication. The main change will come from the new DT minicrate  
 1520 modules which will not anymore be responsible for trigger and event building logic which will be  
 1521 transferred to the back-end electronics instead located in the service cavern via the patch pannels to  
 1522 which the Time-to-Digital Converter (TDC) data will be sent. The trigger and data transfer logic will  
 1523 barely change for CSCs. The existing copper cable connections of cathode and anode FEBs (CFEBs,

1524 and AFEBs which data is transmitted through the ALCTs) toward the trigger and data mother boards  
 1525 (TMBs and DMBs) will simply be replaced by optical fibers and the TMBs and DMBs upgraded with  
 1526 optical versions (OTMBS and ODMBs). As a new feature, the full anode wire data from ALCTs  
 1527 will be sent to the ODMBs causing a lack of FPGA memory resources in these ALCT boards that  
 1528 will thus need replacement.

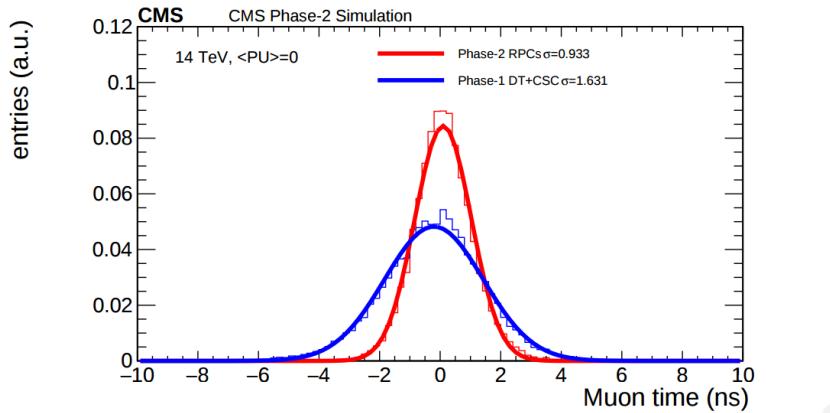


Figure 3.6: Comparison of the simulated time residuals in between reconstructed and true muon times without (blue) and with (red) the upgraded RPC link system.

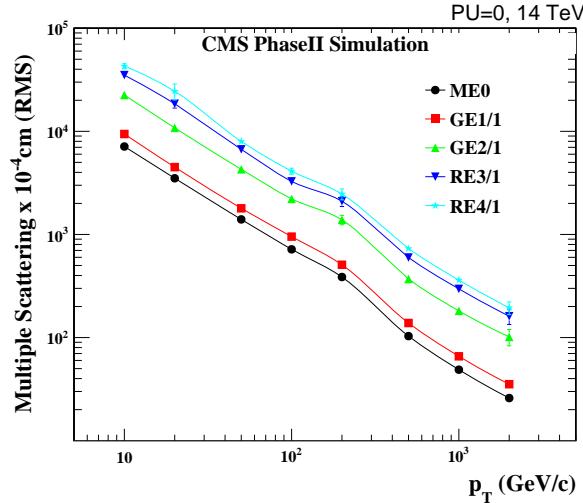
1529 The upgrade on the side of Resistive Plate Chambers will then not come from their on-board  
 1530 electronics but from the Link System located in the service cavern of CMS and that connects the  
 1531 front-end electronics data of RPCs into CMS trigger processors. The main motivation for such an  
 1532 upgrade is that the electronic board composing the link system are built using obsolete components  
 1533 and weak components that can easily suffer from the electromagnetic noise. These components may  
 1534 be the source of failing channels throughout Phase-II. Moreover, these link boards were originally  
 1535 designed only to match RPC digitized signals with the corresponding bunch crossing. Due to this  
 1536 feature, the time resolution of the full RPC chain is thus limited to 25 ns and does not exploit the full  
 1537 time resolution of the detectors. This would make the synchronization of the RPC system easier and  
 1538 allow to have a finer offline background removal within the 25 ns in between bunch crossings thanks  
 1539 to the order of magnitude gained in terms of time resolution.

1540 Upgrading RPC link system will require the installation of 1376 new link boards and 216 control  
 1541 boards. The new boards will make use of the recent progress made with fast FPGAs and will be a  
 1542 great improvement to the ASICs formerly used as they will be able to process signals from several  
 1543 detectors in parallel. The benefit from using the full RPC time resolution thanks to the upgraded  
 1544 link system can be seen through Figure 3.6 where the resolution of the RPC system itself is better  
 1545 than that of DTs and CSCs that was used until now.

### 1546 3.3 New detectors and increased acceptance

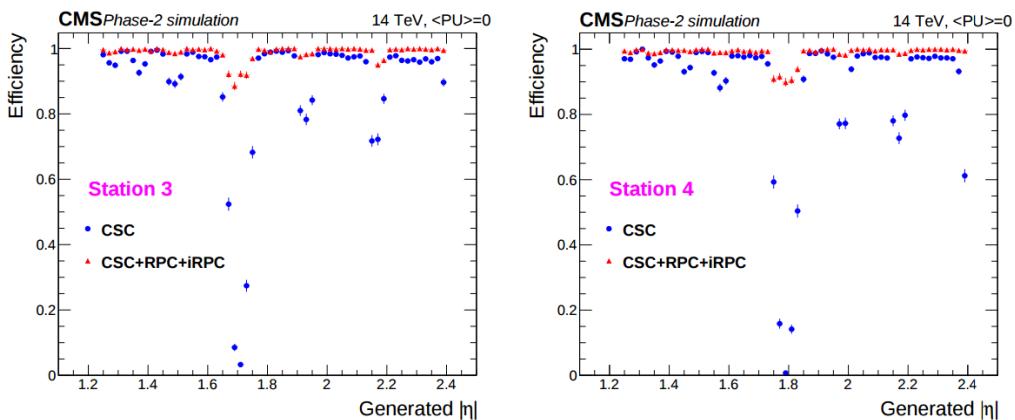
1547 In the present muon system, the redundancy was assured by RPCs used for their good timing per-  
 1548 formances. The extension of the muon system towards higher pseudo-rapidity in order to complete  
 1549 the redundancy in this very region and to contribute to the precision of muon momentum measure-  
 1550 ments will require muon chambers with a spatial resolution less or comparable to the contribution

muon of multiple scattering through the detector volume [21]. Most of the plausible physics is covered only considering muons with  $p_T < 100$  GeV thus, in order to match CMS requirements, a spatial resolution of  $\mathcal{O}(\text{few mm})$  will be necessary for the proposed new RPC stations while the GEMs will need a resolution better than 1 mm, as showed by the simulation in Figure 3.7.



*Figure 3.7: RMS of the multiple scattering displacement as a function of muon  $p_T$  for the proposed forward muon stations. All of the electromagnetic processes such as bremsstrahlung and magnetic field effect are included in the simulation.*

### 3.3.1 Improved forward resistive plate chambers



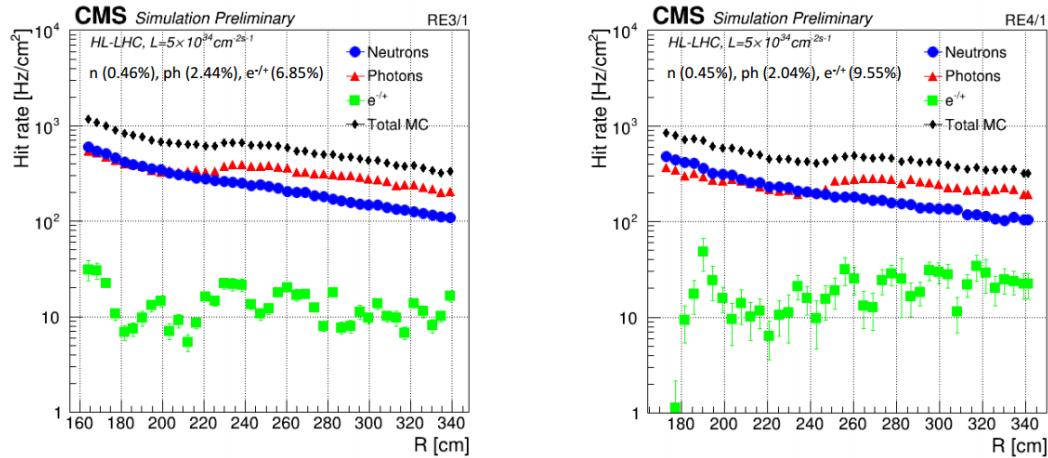
*Figure 3.8: Simulation of the impact of RPC hit inclusion onto the local trigger primitive efficiency in station 3 (left) and station 4 (right). The contribution of iRPC starts above  $|\eta| = 1.8$ .*

Figure 3.3 shows that the iRPCs that will equip the third and fourth endcap disks in position RE3/1 and RE4/1 will finally be the partners of the CSCs in position ME3/1 and ME4/1 and complete Phase-I plans but bringing the needed upgrades in the scope of Phase-II as the older chambers are

not suitable to equip the forward region of CMS due to HL-LHC rates and charge deposition. By completing the redundancy, more track along the muon trajectory will be available and the lever arm will be improved. The benefits from extending the redundancy of the muon system with iRPCs to the forward most region is showed in Figure 3.8 in which the trigger efficiency is showed with and without RPCs in which it is possible to see that the efficiency of CMS trigger with the complete redundancy is improved is above 95% in the region  $|\eta| > 1.8$  as the iRPCs help filling the holes in the CSC system.

1566

The detectors that will be installed in the coming years will be similar to the already existing RPC system. 18 of the new chambers, each spanning  $20^\circ$  in  $\varphi$  around the beam axis with 96 radially oriented trapezoidal read-out strips, will cover each muon endcap disk leading to the production of 72 iRPCs. The main difference with the old RPC chambers is that these detectors will not have readout strips segmented in  $\eta$  as by using fast front-end electronics the strips will be read-out on both sides allowing for a radial spatial resolution of the order of 2 cm in order to contribute to the better reconstruction of muon in the forward region where the bending of muons by the magnetic field is low. This is motivated by the fact that, in the case a  $\eta$  segmentation was used, at least 5 pseudorapidity partitions would have been necessary to reach the minimal radial spatial resolution ( $\approx 20$  cm). Having only one strip read-out from both along the chamber reduces by 60% the total number of channels and the necessary cabling and allows for a better spatial resolution. The strip pitch will range from 6.0 mm (5.9 mm) on the high pseudo-rapidity end to 12.3 mm (10.9 mm) on the low one on position RE3/1 (RE4/1). The spatial resolution in the direction perpendicular to the strips should reach approximately 3 mm, better than the minimal needed resolution (Figure 3.7), and the overall time resolution of the new installation will be equally 1.5 ns, as for the present due to the same link system being used.



*Figure 3.9: Expected hit rate due to neutrons, photons, electrons and positrons at HL-HLC instantaneous luminosity of  $5 \times 10^{34} \text{ cm}^{-2}\text{s}^{-1}$  in RE3/1 and RE4/1 chambers. The sensitivities of iRPCs used in the simulation for each particle are reported and differ from one endcap disk to another as the energies of the considered particles varies with the increasing distance from the interaction point.*

1583

Nevertheless, having only a single strip instead of pseudo-rapidity segmentation will increase the probability of double hits in the same channel. This probability was estimated to be low enough

1584

as it shouldn't exceed 0.7%. This estimation was made assuming an average hit rate per unit area of 600 Hz/cm<sup>2</sup> in the iRPCs (see Figure 3.9), a cluster size (average number of strips fired per muon) of 2, a strip active area of 158.4 × 0.87 cm<sup>2</sup> and a safety factor 3 leading to an estimated rate per strip of 380 kHz corresponding to an average time interval of 2600 ns in between 2 consecutive hits. The time for a signal to go through the full strip length is about 10 ns to which can be added 1 ns of dead time and 2 TDC clock cycles of 2.5 ns for a minimal time interval of 16 ns necessary to avoid ambiguities. The probability of having ambiguous double hits in a strip in then the ratio in between this minimal time interval in between 2 consecutive hits and the average time interval estimated from the rate the detectors are subjected to.

The instantaneous luminosity at HL-LHC being very high, the rates at the level of the new chambers needed to be simulated in order to understand the necessary requirements for these detectors. The simulated results for different background components (neutrons, photons, electrons and positrons) are showed in Figure 3.9 assuming known sensitivities to these particles. It is showed that on average over the iRPC areas the rates would be of the order of 600 Hz/cm<sup>2</sup> (600 Hz/cm<sup>2</sup> seen in RE3/1 and 480 Hz/cm<sup>2</sup> in RE4/1) [27]. Thus, taking into account a safety factor of about 3, it was decided that improved RPCs should at least be certified for rates reaching 2 kHz/cm<sup>2</sup> which would be achieved thanks to several improvements on the design and on the electronics. The detectors design will be based on the existing RPC design as they will be double gaps. Similarly to the existing RPC system, the electrode material will be HPL although the thickness of the electrodes and of the gas gap will be reduced to 1.4 mm as a thinner gas gap leads to a decrease of deposited charge per avalanche as showed in Figure 3.10. The smaller the gas gap, the more the detector becomes sensitive to gap non-uniformities across the electrode planes making a gap of 1.4 mm a good compromise in between these two competing factors.

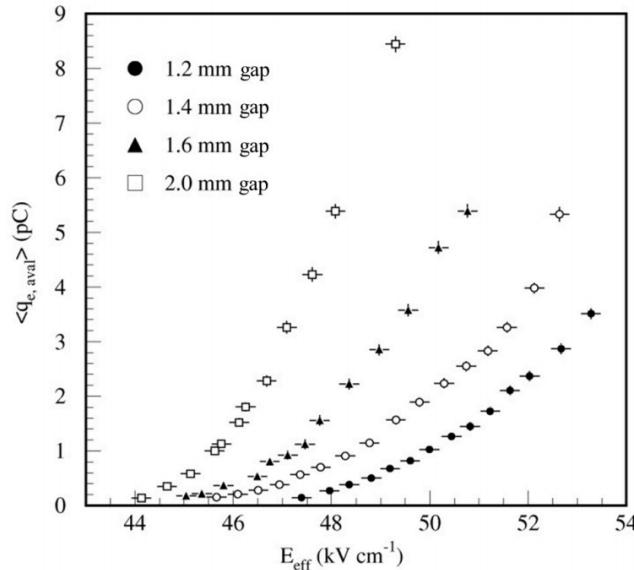


Figure 3.10: Measured average charge per avalanche as a function of the effective electric field for different gas gap thickness in double gap RPCs using HPL electrodes.

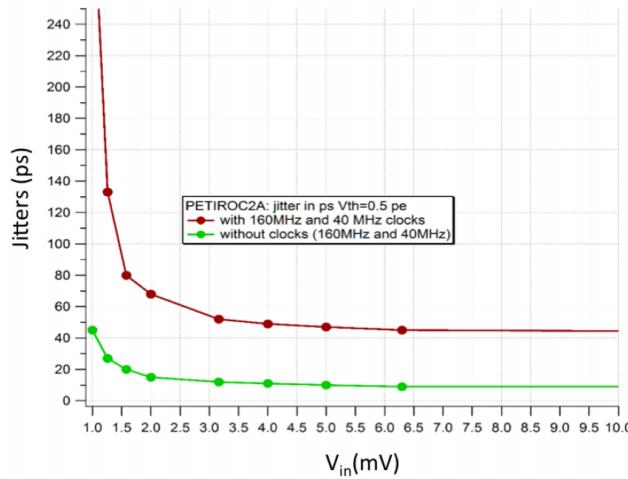


Figure 3.11: The PETIROC time jitter as a function of the input signal amplitude, measured with and without internal clocks.

1608 A lower charge deposition inside of the detector volume means a slower ageing and a longer life-  
 1609 time for detectors subjected to high irradiation. But, in order to take advantage of the lower detector  
 1610 gain, more sensitive electronics are required so that the part of gain that was formerly done in the gas  
 1611 volume can be moved to the electronics. Achieving this with the technology developed more than  
 1612 10 years ago for the present system is not possible as the signal over noise ratio of such electronics  
 1613 doesn't allow to detect charges as low as 10 fC. Moreover, the new front-end electronics will need  
 1614 to be radiation hard to survive to more than 10 years of HL-LHC conditions. The new technology  
 1615 that has been chosen is based on the PETIROC ASIC manufactured by OMEGA and is a 64-channel  
 1616 ASIC called CMS RPCROC on which the original SiGe technology will be replaced by CMOS to  
 1617 increase its radiation hardness while keeping fast pre-amplification and discrimination with a very  
 1618 low jitter that can reach less than 20 ps if no internal clock is used, as can be seen from Figure 3.11.  
 1619 The ASIC is associated with an FPGA which purpose is to measure time thanks to a TDC with a  
 1620 time resolution of 50-100 ps developed by Tsinghua University and that will provide a measurement  
 1621 of the signal position along the strip with a precision of a few cm by measuring the signal timing  
 1622 on both ends of the strips. In order to read-out all 96 strips, 3 ASICs and 3 TDCs, each having 64  
 1623 channels, are hosted on a front-end board attached to the chamber.

1624

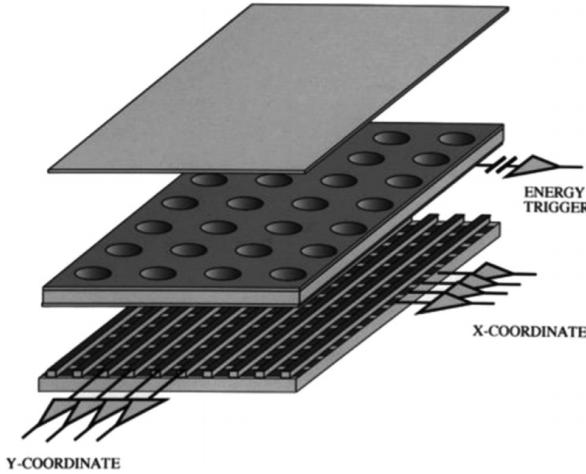
1625 [Wait for the analysis of 2018 GIF++ data to add interesting information about the time and  
 1626 spatial resolution measured during test beam periods.]

1627

### 1628 3.3.2 Gas electron multipliers

1629 In the region closer to the interaction point where the spatial resolution is requested to be better  
 1630 than 1 mm for the new detectors (at least for GE1/1 and ME0, GE2/1 being in the same order of  
 1631 requested spatial resolution than the new iRPCs that will equip the third and fourth endcaps), the  
 1632 choice has been made to use triple GEMs, micro pattern gaseous detectors, in the place of RPCs.  
 1633 The GE1/1 project had been the first to be approved and demonstrators had been installed in CMS

already during LS1. The rest of the detectors will be installed during LS2 while the GE2/1 and ME0 projects are still under development. ME0, GE1/1 and GE2/1 will be installed respectively next to the HCAL endcap, on the first and on the second muon endcap disks as can be seen from Figure 3.3.



*Figure 3.12: Schematics of a GEM showing the cathode on top, the GEM foil separating the gas volume into the drift region, in between the cathode and foil, and the induction region, in between the GEM foil and the anode, and the anode on which a 2D read-out is installed. A negative voltage is applied on the cathode while the anode is connected to the ground.*

Gas Electron multipliers are gaseous detectors [28] which gas volume is confined in between 2 planar electrodes, the anode serving as read-out panel. The gas volume is divided in 2 or more regions by a single or multiple *GEM foils* as showed in Figure 3.12. These foils are very thin, of the order of a few tens of  $\mu\text{m}$ , and are pierced with holes as can be seen in Figure 3.13. Both surfaces of the GEM foils are clad with copper in order to apply a strong electric field in between each side that will generate very strong potentials in the holes. The gas region contained in between the cathode and the GEM foil is called the drift region as the electric field is not strong enough to cause avalanches and thus start an amplification. The primary electrons drift toward the foil and are accelerated and amplify by the very high potential within the holes, as showed in Figure 3.13. Then the electrons reach the second drift region in which they will induce signal on the read-out located on the anode. By restraining the amplification process at the level of the holes, the electrons can stay in a very confined space and thus induce a very localized current, providing the GEMs with a very good spatial resolution.

In order to achieve a stronger amplification, the amplification process can be repeated several times in a row. The GEMs that will be used in CMS are triple GEM detectors operated with a 70/30 gas mixture of  $\text{Ar}/\text{CO}_2$ . They contain 3 GEM foils and thus 3 electron amplifications, as can be seen in Figure 3.14. The GEM foils used in CMS are 50  $\mu\text{m}$  foils clad with 5  $\mu\text{m}$  of copper on each side. The foils are pierced with double-canonical holes which inner and outer diameters are respectively 50 and 70  $\mu\text{m}$  which are placed 140  $\mu\text{m}$  from each other in an hexagonal pattern, as showed in Figure 3.13. These detectors have a time resolution better than 10 ns and reach very good spatial resolutions of less than 200  $\mu\text{rad}$  as indeed the position of the hits is not measured along the strips but following the azimuthal angle granularity of the radially organized trapezoidal strips.

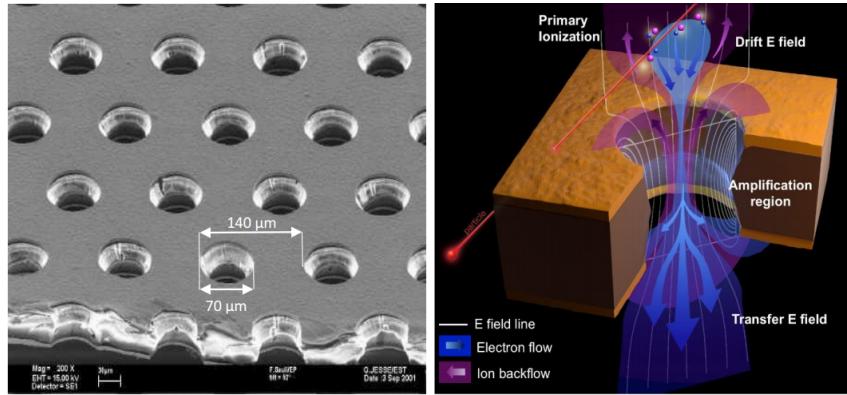


Figure 3.13: Left: Picture of a CMS GEM foil provided by a scanning electron microscope. Right: Representation of the electric field lines in a GEM hole and of the amplification that electrons and ions undergo in the hole's volume due to the very intense electric field.

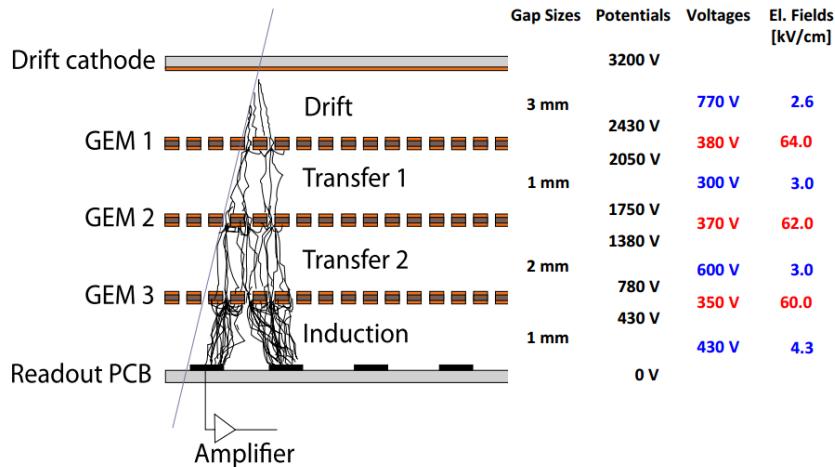


Figure 3.14: Schematic representation of CMS triple GEMs. The gas volume is divided into 4 areas. The drift area is the region where the primary electrons are created before being amplified a first time while passing through the first GEM foil. Then the process of drift and amplification is repeated twice in following two transfer areas and GEM foils. Finally, the charges have been amplified enough to induce current in the read-out strips while in the last drift area. The dimensions, potentials and electric fields are provided.

1659 The GEM Upgrade is divided into 3 subsystems as GE1/1 was the first approved project [29]  
 1660 and that the detectors will already be installed during LS2. GE2/1 and ME0, on the other hand,  
 1661 will profit of the R&D knowledge and skills developed for GE1/1 while the requirements for each  
 1662 subsystem are different as they are not placed at the same distance from the interaction point. In this  
 1663 very forward region, a different position with respect to the center of the detector can change dra-  
 1664 matically the conditions in which the detectors will have to be operated. In terms of rate capability,  
 1665 GE2/1, which is the furthest, is required to withstand  $2.1 \text{ kHz/cm}^2$  while GE1/1 needs to be better  
 1666 than  $10 \text{ kHz/cm}^2$  and ME0, better than  $150 \text{ kHz/cm}^2$ . In terms of ageing with respect to charge  
 1667 deposition, ME0 needs to be certified to  $840 \text{ mC/cm}^2$ , GE1/1 to  $200 \text{ mC/cm}^2$  and GE2/1 only to

1668 9 mC/cm<sup>2</sup>. All 3 detectors need to have a time resolution better than 10 ns and an angular resolution  
 1669 better than 500 µrad.

1670 On each GE1/1 ring, 36 super chambers, consisting of 2 single GEM layers and spanning 10°,  
 1671 will be installed covering the pseudo-rapidity region  $1.6 < |\eta| < 2.2$  together with ME1/1 CSCs and  
 1672 the reach of the muon system will be improved thanks to the GE2/1 that will overlap with the GE1/1  
 1673 and cover a region from  $|\eta| > 1.6$  to  $|\eta| < 2.4$  and complete the redundancy of ME2/1. The super  
 1674 chambers, built with 2 triple GEM layers each consisting of 4 single GEM modules due to the rather  
 1675 large surface of the GE2/1 chambers, that will be installed on the first ring of the second endcap will  
 1676 span 20° each, hence, a total of 72 chambers will be assembled to equip the muon system. Finally,  
 1677 the ME0 installed near the HCAL endcap will cover the region  $2.0 < |\eta| < 2.8$  and this subsystem  
 1678 will consist in super modules of 6 layers of triple GEM detectors covering an azimuthal angle of 20°  
 1679 leading to the construction of 216 single detectors.

1680 All these new GEM detectors will be using a similar internal layout which is described in Figure  
 1681 3.14. The incoming muons will create detectable electron-ion pairs in the 3 mm thick drift  
 1682 volume in which an electric field of 2.6 kV/cm is applied for the electrons to drift to the first GEM  
 1683 foil on which a very intense field of 64 kV/cm is applied over a distance of only 60 µm which allows  
 1684 for an average electronic gain of 20 to 25. After the first amplification stage, the electrons drift over  
 1685 the 1 mm separating the 2 first GEM foils thanks to an electric field of 3.0 kV/cm and are again  
 1686 amplified by a factor 20 to 25 while going through the second GEM foil to which is applied an elec-  
 1687 tric field of 62 kV/cm. The electron drift another 2 mm towards the last GEM foil through a field of  
 1688 3.0 kV/cm and are multiplied one last time from a similar factor passing through the 60 kV/cm  
 1689 of the last GEM foil holes. Finally, they drift along the 1 mm of the induction volume in a field of  
 1690 4.3 kV/cm to reach the trapezoidal strips on the read-out PCB used as anode. The total detector  
 1691 gain is approximately of the order of  $10^4$  and the resulting output signal is both due to the induction  
 1692 of moving charges in the induction volume and of charge pic-up once they read the read-out strips.

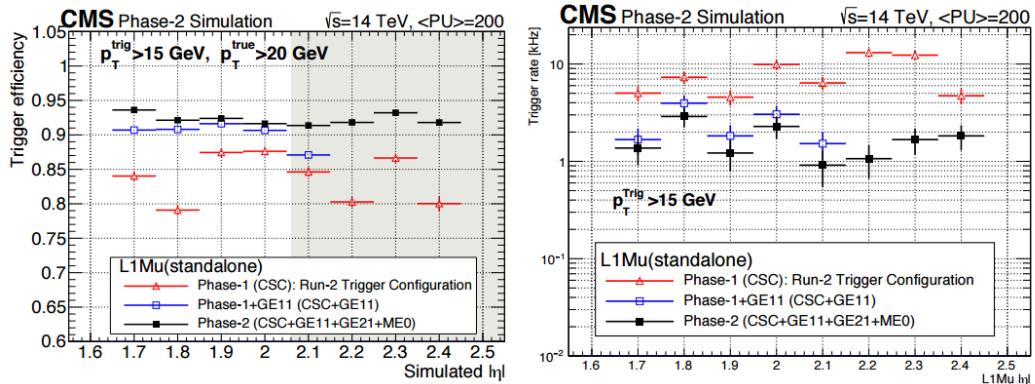


Figure 3.15: Simulated efficiency and rate of the standalone Level-1 muon trigger using tracks reconstructed in CSCs and all GEM stations compared with Phase-I values in the case where only CSCs are used or CSCs+GE1/1. The zones of inefficiency of the CSC subsystem are compensated by the addition of GEMs during Phase-II and the trigger rates is kept from increasing due to the high luminosity.

1693 Adding the GEMs into the forward region of the muon system will allow to strongly enhance  
 1694 the Level-1 Trigger performance by reducing the inefficiency regions and the trigger rate as showed  
 1695 in Figure 3.15. Moreover, benefiting from the good spatial and angular resolution of the GEMs, the

<sup>1696</sup> precision into the muon measurement will also be greatly improved by the addition of GEMs as can  
<sup>1697</sup> be seen from the simulation presented in Figure 3.16.

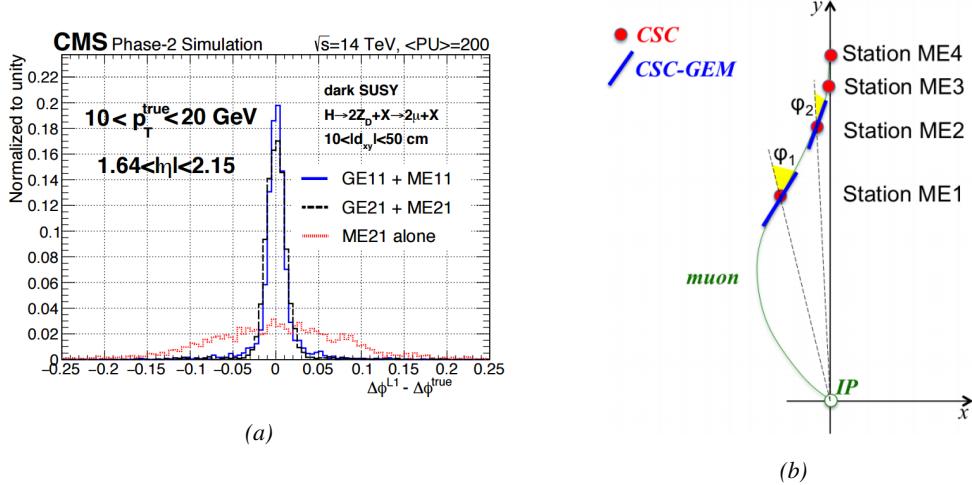


Figure 3.16: Figure 3.16a: Simulated resolution of the muon direction measurement  $\Delta\phi$  with Phase-II conditions. In the second endcap station, the resolution is compared in the case of CSCs (ME2/I) alone and CSCs+GEMs (GE2/I+ME2/I) while a similar resolution measurement is given in the case of the first station (GE1/I+ME1/I). Figure 3.16b: The addition of GEM detectors on stations 1 and 2 (ME0 is considered to contribute to station station 1) as redundant system to CSCs allows to improve the muon momentum improvement through a more accurate measurement of the local bending angles  $\phi_1$  and  $\phi_2$ .

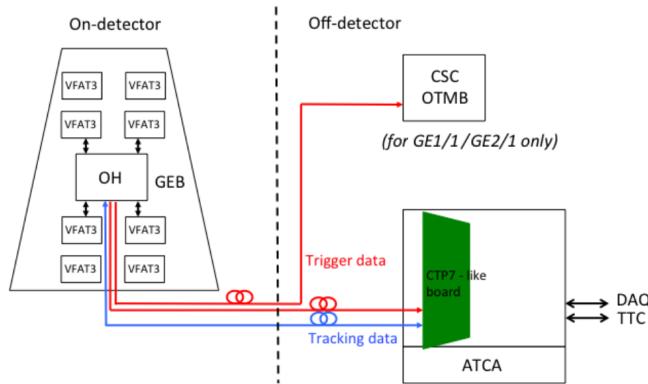


Figure 3.17: Schematics of the data communication chain for DAQ of the GEM subsystems. The sending of trigger data via optical links to the CSC OTMBs is only done for GE1/I and GE2/I to match the data with ME1/I and ME2/I.

<sup>1698</sup> The read-out of GEMs will use the same technology. The anode planes used as read-out PCBs  
<sup>1699</sup> and referred to as GEM Electronics board (GEB) host on their outer surface VFAT3 ASICs that  
<sup>1700</sup> connect to a total of 128 strips for a very fine angular granularity. Along the endcap radius, the strips are  
<sup>1701</sup> divided into 8 pseudo-rapidity partitions. In the case of GE1/I and ME0, each  $\eta$ -partition consist in  
<sup>1702</sup> 384 read-out strips connected into 3 VFAT3 ASICs and offering a while the large GE2/I partitions

1703 contain twice as many channels. Both GE1/1 and GE2/1 strips have an angular pitch of  $474\text{ }\mu\text{m}$   
 1704 while this of ME0 is twice larger due to its proximity with the interaction point. The VFAT3 ASICs  
 1705 allow for a latency better than the  $12.5\text{ }\mu\text{s}$  required by CMS Level-1 Trigger and there frequencies  
 1706 goes up to 1 MHz. They are connected into the Optohybrid Board (OH) and this full ensemble  
 1707 (GEB+VAT3+OH) constitute the on-chamber electronics. The OH is then sending the data to the  
 1708 modules constituting the DAQ of the GEM system via optical fibers. These back-end electronics  
 1709 modules are located in the service cavern of CMS and host CMS communication devices, used to  
 1710 have a common clock, and control and links to the Endcap Muon Track Finder (EMTF) system.  
 1711 Moreover, GE1/1 and GE2/1 also have links with the CSC OTMBs as the OH of these 2 subsystems  
 1712 send data into these boards. This communication chain can be seen in Figure 3.17.

1713

1714 The detectors that will placed in CMS will have to live through Phase-II without significant  
 1715 performance degradation to ensure an efficient data taking and the possibility to investigate more  
 1716 exotic physics. As the 3 GEM subsystems will be using the same detector technology, the choice  
 1717 was made to certify the GEMs in the worst of the 3 environments, i.e. the ME0 station located right  
 1718 behind the HCAL. According to FLUKA simulation, including all the latest foreseen upgrades into  
 1719 the CMS detector geometry, it was shown that the maximal hit rate expected in ME0 would be of  
 1720 the order of  $50\text{ kHz/cm}^2$  with contributions of neutrons ( $6\text{ kHz/cm}^2$ ), photons ( $35\text{ kHz/cm}^2$ ), and  
 1721 electrons and positrons ( $8\text{ kHz/cm}^2$ ) resulting in a charge deposition a little lower than  $300\text{ mC/cm}^2$   
 1722 after 10 years of HL-LHC [23]. It is necessary to understand the classical ageing effects on the GEMs  
 1723 but also premature ageing due to contaminants in the gas mixture leading to polymerization on the  
 1724 surface of the GEM foils during operation and the effect of discharges on the detector operations if  
 1725 they have to happen during their lifetime.

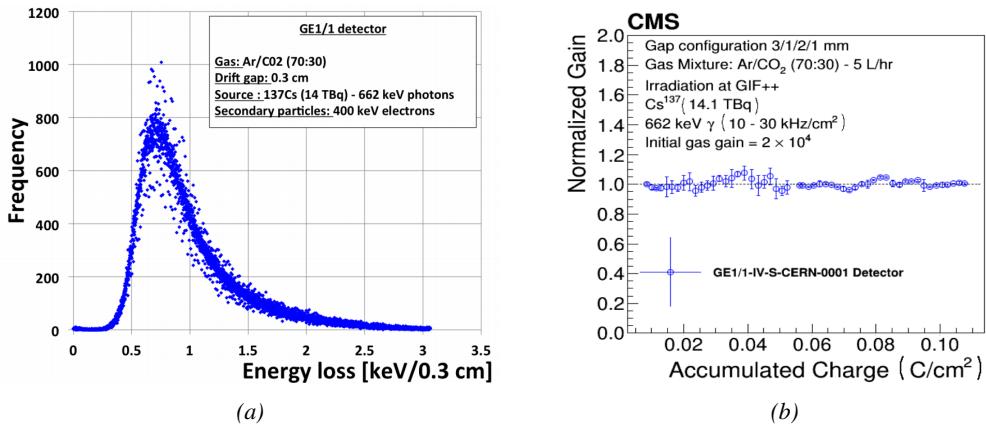


Figure 3.18: Figure 3.18a: Energy spectrum of  $\text{GIF}^{++}$   $^{137}\text{Cs}$  source as measured by the GE1/1 detector installed in  $\text{GIF}^{++}$ . Figure 3.18b: Evolution of the normalized gain of the GE1/1 detector installed at in  $\text{GIF}^{++}$  as a function of the integrated charge per unit area. The first part of the study, up to a charge of  $55\text{ mC/cm}^2$  had been done in the former Gamma Irradiation Facility (GIF) that has now been dismantled following the construction of  $\text{GIF}^{++}$ . No variation of the normalized gain can be observed after an accumulation of  $110\text{ mC/cm}^2$ .

1726

To characterize the classical ageing effects, a campaign is being conducted in the new Gamma Irradiation Facility ( $\text{GIF}^{++}$ ) of CERN where a GE1/1 detector operated at its nominal gain is placed 50 cm from the facility's 14 TBq  $^{137}\text{Cs}$  source which emits gammas at an energy of 662 keV. In

order to spot any ageing of the detector, the effective gain is kept monitored, as can be seen in Figure 3.18b, as its variations gives clues about different aspects of the detector such as the geometry of the holes, the electric field configuration or the gas composition. The monitoring of the gamma energy distribution, showed on Figure 3.18a, can give an idea on the evolution of the performance of the chamber and finally, the evolution of the currents through time also is a good indicator of the appearance of dark current in the detector that would be due to the emission of electrons by thin insulating layers of the detector subjected to a long lasting irradiation known as Malter effect. At the time the Technical Design Report (TDR) for the Phase-II upgrade of the muon system was written [23], the GEM group had reported a total integrated charge of  $110 \text{ mC/cm}^2$  which, if compared with 10 years of HL-LHC operation, represents a safety factor of 18 for the GE1/1 subsystem and a factor 37 for the GE2/1 subsystem but only 39% of the total expected ME0 integrated charge. It is estimated that reaching the total integrated charge necessary to certify the detectors for Phase-II operation will take another 2 to 3 years. Nevertheless, the present status of the longevity study shows no degradation of the performance of the detector installed in GIF++ as can be seen through Figure 3.18.

Aside of the classical ageing tests, outgassing of the different materials composing the GEMs have been conducted by placing the different materials to be tested into an outgassing box that consists in a stainless steel cylinder through which the CMS GEM 70/30 gas mixture of  $\text{Ar}/\text{CO}_2$  with the possible contaminants is flowed while the detector is exposed to the continuous irradiation of a radioactive source and the heat is raised to enhance the outgassing. From the detector that was placed into this outgassing box, only one component was identified to cause loss of performance due to outgassing. This component was the polyurethane *Cell-Pack* used to coat the internal frame of the GEMs and the polymerization on its surface caused a 20% decrease of the gas gain. this polyurethane was replaced with a new one for which no outgassing effect causing a loss of performance was reported.

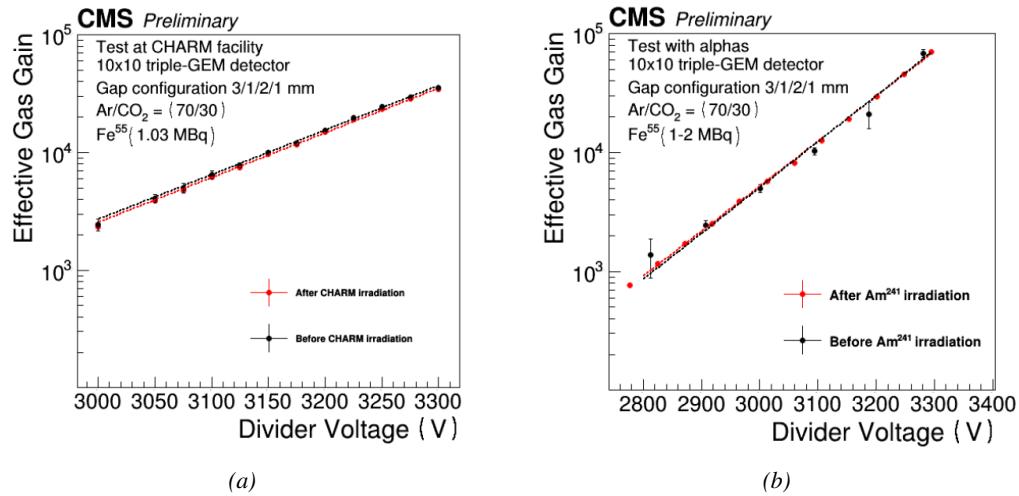


Figure 3.19: Figure 3.19a: Comparison of the gas gain as a function of the divider voltage before and after the irradiation of a triple-GEM by neutrons in CHARM. Figure 3.19b: Comparison of the gas gain as a function of the divider voltage before and after the irradiation of a triple-GEM by alpha particles.

Finally, even though the triple-GEM technology makes the detectors safe of discharges thanks to

its several amplification stages that allow to reach high gas gain using a relatively low electric field applied on the foils and to the distance separating the last foil from the read-out panel that is high enough to prevent discharging from developing all the way to the read-out, and hence, be stopped before it can cause any harm, it is important to have a good understanding of the discharge probability to ensure a safe operation over long periods. In order to further prevent discharges to develop in the detector volume, the GEM foils' power supply have been sectorized and protection resistors have been installed to limit the energy available for the discharge development. To reproduce the high-energy neutron background conditions of CMS, a GE1/1 detector have been placed in the CHARM facility of CERN. This facility allows to irradiate the detectors with a neutron fluence as high as  $2.5 \times 10^8 / \text{cm}^2$ . The detectors were operated with a slightly higher gain of  $3.5 \times 10^4$ . It was measured that the discharge probability for a GEM operated under CMS conditions was of  $2.85 \times 10^{-9}$  per heavily ionizing particle with a 95% confidence level that would correspond to 225 discharges per  $\text{cm}^2$  in ME0, 17 in GE1/1 and 12 in GE2/1 during the full HL-LHC period. According to Figure 3.19a, no degradation of the performance was observed after the irradiation at CHARM were 24 discharges per unit area were reported. Nevertheless, another test were the detector was exposed to a 5.5 MeV alpha source and were 450 discharges per unit area were reported didn't show any drop of performances either, as can be seen in Figure 3.19b.

### 3.3.3 Installation schedule

The previous discussion on the different upgrade projects makes it clear that a lot of work is scheduled for CMS to be ready at the end of LS3 for HL-LHC. Conducting all the upgrades of the muon system together with upgrades of the other subsystems like the replacement of the Tracker and of part of the ECAL, will prove to be very difficult as the opening of CMS to access the Barrel will be done by fully opening the endcaps leaving only the first disk to be accessible. Thus, most subsystems have planned early installation over LS2, and the following YETS until LS3 in order to give more space to LS3 schedule.

First of all, LS2 will see the installation of GE1/1 detectors, all the on-detector schedule of CSCs and the installation of the necessary services for the improved RPCs to be installed later, such as the HV and LV power supply lines, the gas and cooling lines or signal cables. CSCs will have a huge work to do during LS2 as they will need to extract all of their detectors to refurbish them with upgraded DCFEB and ALCT mezzanine boards. The GE1/1 services were installed during LS1 together with a few demonstrator and only the detectors needs to be integrated into the first endcap disk. The detectors are presently being built and tested at the different assembly site to prepare for a smooth LS2 work.

The work of GEMs will be continued during the following YETS during which is planned the installation of the GE2/1 stations to only leave the ME0 to be installed during LS3. The iRPC program will follow a similar path as the new detectors will be installed during the YETS preceding LS3 in prevision of the fact that the endcap disks will not be accessible during LS3. This way, all the subsystems, but DTs, made great effort on planning their installation and integration within CMS only to have to deal with off-detector issues during the LS3 period, such as the replacement of ODMBs and HV system in the case of CSCs or the upgrade of the RPC Link System. Finally, during LS3 are scheduled the replacement of DT minicrates electronics and the installation and integration of ME0 GEMs together with the HGCAL.

### 3.4 Implications of the different upgrades on the Level-1 Trigger. Improvement of physics performance.

The upgrades of the different subsystems will have a subsequent impact on the Level-1 Trigger. Indeed, although its main scheme will not be affected, the efficiency of the trigger in identifying muons and provide the DAQ with good and fast trigger that can cope with HL-LHC instantaneous luminosity is a major improvement. In addition to the upgrade of the muon system in terms of trigger accept rate and latency, the Level-1 Trigger will get extra information in including the Tracker Trigger into its Muon Track Finder logic and combine the L1 Muon Trigger with Tracker and Calorimeter Triggers to generate a Global L1 Trigger with a much better momentum resolution, as showed in Figure 3.20.

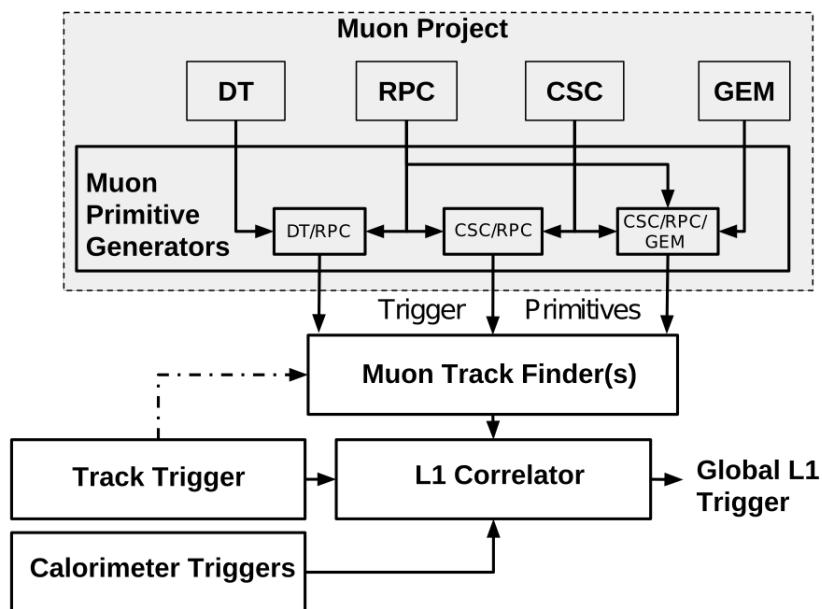
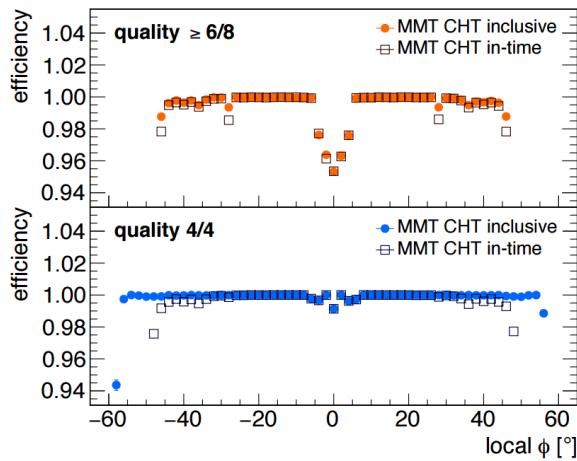


Figure 3.20: Data flow of the Level-1 Trigger during Phase-II operations.

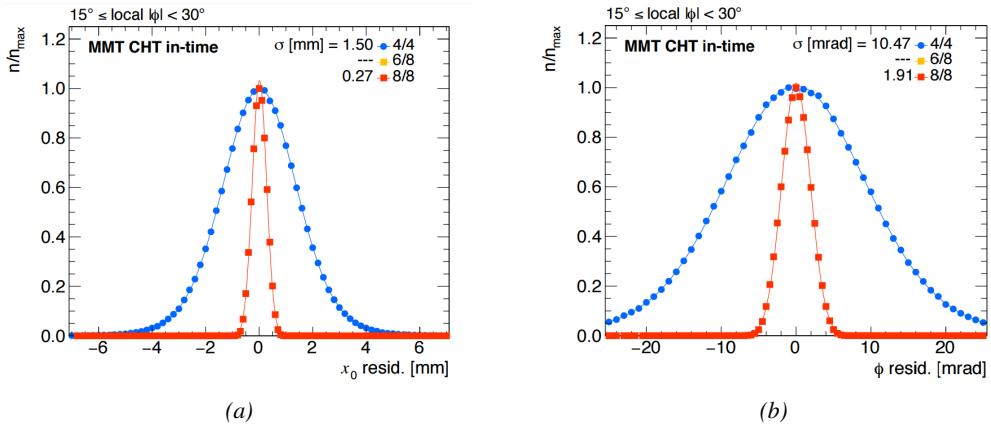
In terms of muon trigger, 3 regions are considered due to their different track finding logic: the Barrel Muon Track Finder (BMTF), the Endcap Muon Track Finder (EMTF) for both the barrel and endcap regions, and finally the Overlap Muon Track Finder (OMTF) which concerns the pseudo-rapidity region in which there is a common coverage by both the barrel and endcap muon systems. This region can be seen in Figure 3.3 for  $0.9 < |\eta| < 1.2$  and requires a specific more complex logic to provide with an efficient reconstruction of the muons due to the different orientation of the detectors and of the more complex magnetic field of this region that needs to be taken into account. The benefits of the upgrade for each of these track finders will be coming from different improvements and will be detailed sector by sector.

The main contribution to the improvement of the BMTF is the time resolution improvement of RPC link systems that will allow to take profit of the full 1.5 ns resolution of the detectors. From the perspective of RPCs only, this improvement will help reducing the neutron induced background and

slightly improve the bunch crossing assignment. The upgrade of DT electronics is also to take into account as the trigger primitive generator will be renewed through the use of TDCs that will send the digitized signals directly to the back-end electronics instead of having an on-detector trigger logic as it will be the case until the end of Phase-I. The front data of both DTs and RPCs will be sent to the same back-end electronics. These upgrades were detailed in section 3.2 and will lead to a more robust operation of the trigger in the barrel region. Indeed, the combination of RPC hits together with DT primitives will bring improvement in the bunch crossing assignment and improve the efficiency of the trigger in between the wheels where the quality of DT primitives is the poorest. Moreover, having a redundant information is important in the case of failure and loss of efficiency of one of either subsystems.



*Figure 3.21: Comparison of Phase-II DT trigger primitives algorithmic efficiency for segments obtained with 2 super-layers ( $\text{quality} \geq 6/8$ ) and 1 super-layer only ( $\text{quality} = 4/4$ ). The simulation was done by generating  $2 \times 10^6$  muons. The candidate tracks with correct time identification is showed with open symbols.*



*Figure 3.22: Simulated spatial (3.22a) and angular (3.22b) resolution of the algorithm using 8 aligned hits in both super-layers ( $\text{quality} = 8/8$ ) and 4 aligned hits in only one super-layer ( $\text{quality} = 4/4$ ). The contribution of intermediate quality tracks (6 aligned hits) is negligible in the angular range shown. [Be careful to update this caption as it uses a text to close to the published one.]*

1831     The loss of single hit efficiency of DTs due to ageing will also force the DT to change the algo-  
 1832     rithm use to identify tracks. So far, the identification was only performed at the level of a single DT  
 1833     super-layer, which is composed of 4 single DT layers. In the perspective the single efficiency drops,  
 1834     this will require to be upgraded to try to combine the data of more than a single super-layer to keep  
 1835     a high muon track identification efficiency. In addition to this change in trigger primitive candidate  
 1836     quality, new algorithms with higher efficiency are being developed. According to Figure 3.21, the  
 1837     efficiency of the new algorithm, both in the cases using 1 or 2 super-layers, is higher than with the  
 1838     current system [30]. Moreover, the overall efficiency of an algorithm requesting at least a muon  
 1839     detected in 6 DT layers out of the 8 composing the 2 super-layers of a DT module would stay com-  
 1840     parable to the 4 DT layers out of 4 algorithm within the local bending angle range. On the other  
 1841     hand, despite the slight loss of efficiency in the low angle range, the algorithm using more DT layers  
 1842     achieves both higher spatial and angular resolution according to Figure 3.22.

1843

1844     With new detectors to cover the very forward region and the upgrade of RPC Link System,  
 1845     the EMTF will be greatly improved. The current EMTF already use more sophisticated algorithms  
 1846     by combining together RPC hits and CSC primitives and will also benefit from the improved time  
 1847     resolution of the RPC system. The GEMs, in stations 1 and 2, and the iRPCs, in stations 3 and 4,  
 1848     will be added into the EMTF algorithm. Both these contributions will help increasing the efficiency  
 1849     of the L1 trigger in the endcap region in one hand, and help lowering the L1 trigger rate in the other  
 1850     hand, especially in the most forward region. The improvement of the efficiency will come both from  
 1851     the better time resolution of RPC link boards and from the addition of more hits along the muon  
 1852     tracks and also a contribution from the GEMs to the lever arm of each track thanks to their high  
 1853     angular resolution.

1854

1855     The rate will be partly reduced in the forward region thanks to the better spatial resolution of  
 1856     iRPCs, with respect to the current RPC system, that will reduce the ambiguity brought by multiple  
 1857     local charged tracks in CSCs, as explained through Figure 3.24. Indeed, as the rates will increase,  
 1858     the probability to record more than a single local charged track will greatly increase. This is due to  
 1859     the fact that the trigger algorithm uses information from 3 consecutive bunch crossings to find muon  
 1860     tracks. It is estimated that with iRPCs operated at 95% efficiency the resolution of ambiguous events  
 would be of the order of 99.7%.

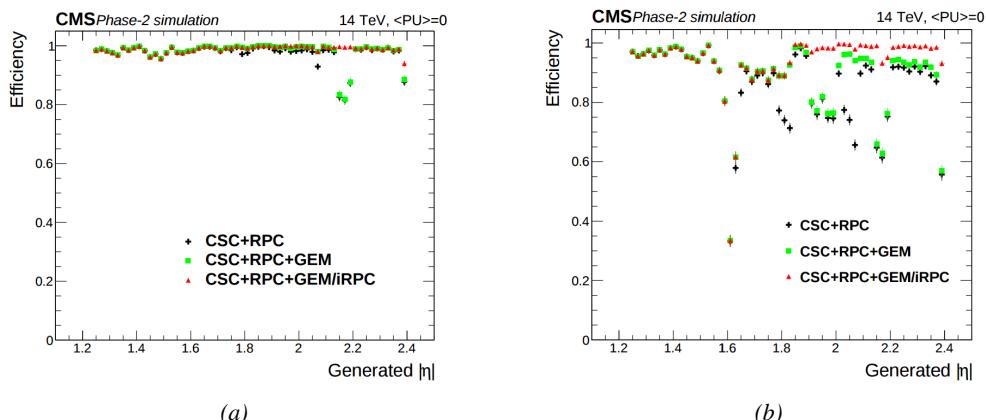
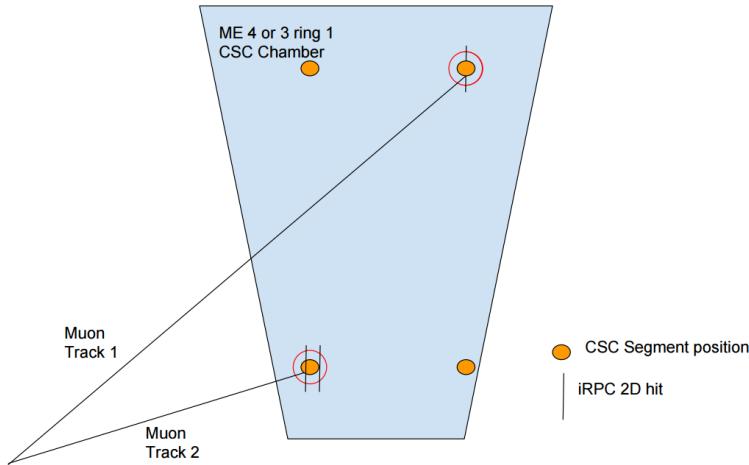


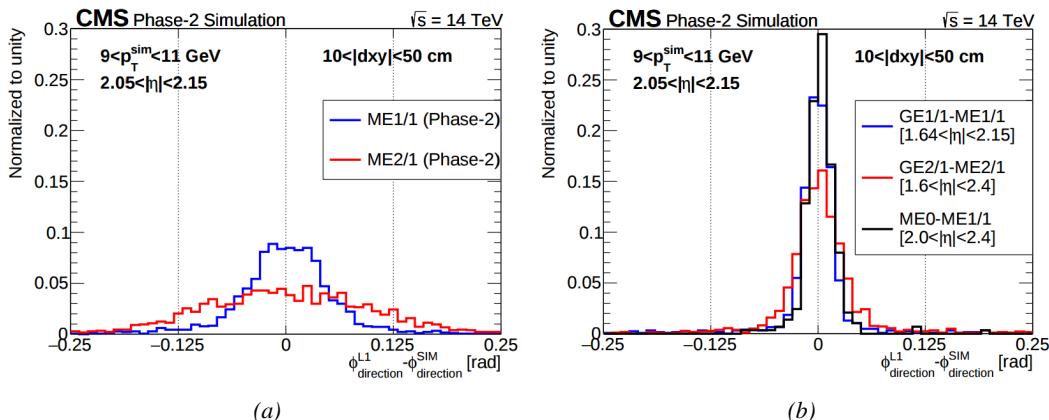
Figure 3.23: Efficiency of the L1 trigger in the endcap region after Phase-II upgrade in the case CSC/GEM/RPC hits are requested in at least 2 stations out of four (3.23a) and in all four stations (3.23b).



*Figure 3.24: Resolution of the LCT ambiguous events thanks to the combination of CSC and iRPC readout data. Using CSCs only, 2 pairs of hits are possible.*

The addition of GEMs will improve greatly the measured muon momentum resolution by improving the global resolution of the direction of muon tracks, as can be seen in Figure 3.25, which will contribute to lowering the trigger rate and increase the efficiency, as can be seen from Figure 3.26 that focuses especially in the most challenging pseudo-rapidity region. Data from both CSCs and GEMs are combined into the OTMB to build on each station, GEM/CSC primitives matching space and time information from both subsystems.

Finally, the development of a track finder specific to the overlap region was already achieved during the Phase-I upgrade of the L1-Trigger [31]. Nevertheless, the improvements of DT spatial resolution and RPC timing will be carried and implemented into the OMTF.



*Figure 3.25: The angular resolution on reconstructed muon tracks in the GEM overlap region  $2.0 < |\eta| < 2.15$  is compared for Phase-II conditions in the case CSC are alone (Figure 3.25a) and in the case the GEMs' data, including ME0, is combined to which of CSCs (Figure 3.25b).*

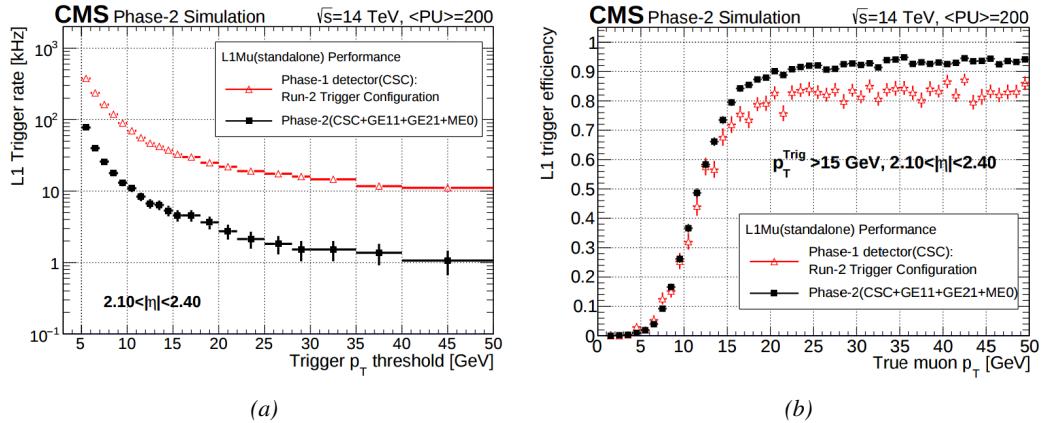


Figure 3.26: Comparison of L1 trigger performances for prompt muons with and without the addition of GEMs in the region  $2.1 < |\eta| < 2.4$  at Phase-II conditions. GEMs would allow a reduction of the trigger accept rate by an order of magnitude (Figure 3.26a) while increasing the trigger efficiency (Figure 3.26b).

### 3.5 Ecofriendly gas studies

Future strict restrictions in the use of certain gases will affect the gaseous detectors of several experiment, including CMS. The European Commission adopted a new "F-gas regulation" in 2014 [32] with the goal to strongly control and reduce the use of fluorinated gases with high Global Warming Potential (GWP). Using  $CF_4$ ,  $C_2H_2F_4$  and  $SF_6$ , both CSC and RPC subsystems will need to address this problem by finding new gas mixture for the operation of their detectors. Finding a replacement for these gas component that were used for very specific reasons will be a great challenge. Indeed, CSCs use  $CF_4$  in order to enhance the longevity of the detectors, increase the drift velocity of electrons and quench photons with a non-flammable gas mixture. RPCs use a mixture mainly composed of  $C_2H_2F_4$ , or  $R134a$ , that features a high effective Townsend coefficient and the great average fast charge allowing for operations with a high threshold, and contains a small fraction of  $SF_6$  that is used for its electronegative properties that prevents the development of delta-rays in the gas volume that might trigger multiple ionization and avalanches.

	CSC	RPC
Greenhouse gases used	$CF_4$	$C_2H_2F_4$ and $SF_6$
Greenhouse gases fraction in the gas mixture	10%	95.2% and 0.3%
Global Warming Potential (relative to $CO_2$ )	6500	1300 and 23900
Gas mixture re-circulation	Yes, 90%	Yes, 85%
Gas mixture replenishing rate (l/hr)	700	1100
F-gas recuperation	Yes, $\approx 40\%$	No
F-gas venting rate (l/hr)	42	1047 and 3.3
$CO_2$ -equivalent rate ( $m^3/h$ )	273	1440
Relative impact (entire muon system = 100%)	16%	84%

Table 3.1: Details of the greenhouse fluorinated gases used in CMS and of their GWP [23].

Nevertheless, all these gases have a very high GWP, as reported in Table 3.1, and only few options are left. The subsystems need to work on strongly decrease the loss of these gases due to leaks in the

1885 gas system or completely change their gas mixture for more ecofriendly ones. Reducing the amount  
 1886 of F-gas released in the atmosphere due to leaks on the current gas system will require installation  
 1887 of a F-gas recuperation system on RPCs side and an upgrade of CSCs existing one in addition to  
 1888 the repair of existing leaks. With such measures, it is expected that the total rate of greenhouses  
 1889 gas vented in the atmosphere would represent only 1.6% of the current levels [23]. In the most  
 1890 critical case the F-gas were to be banned, it would be necessary to have replacement mixtures to  
 1891 operate CMS. CSC is presently investigating replacement for  $CF_4$  such as  $CF_3I$ ,  $C_4F_6$ ,  $IC_3F_6$ ,  
 1892  $C_3F_8$  or  $CHF_3$  while RPCs, in collaboration with the ATLAS RPC group which uses the same gas  
 1893 mixture and, hence, faces similar restrictions, have identified  $CF_3I$  ( $GWP \leq 1$ ) and  $C_3H_2F_4$  ( $GWP < 1$ ), referred to as HFO-1234ze, as potential candidates with mixtures containing  $CO_2$  but more  
 1894 R&D needs to be conducted for both subsystems before concluding on the best alternative. No good  
 1895 alternative to the present mixtures will require very efficient abatement system in CMS to burn and  
 1896 convert the greenhouse gases into less harmful ones. This way, the air pollution would be strongly  
 1897 reduced.  
 1898

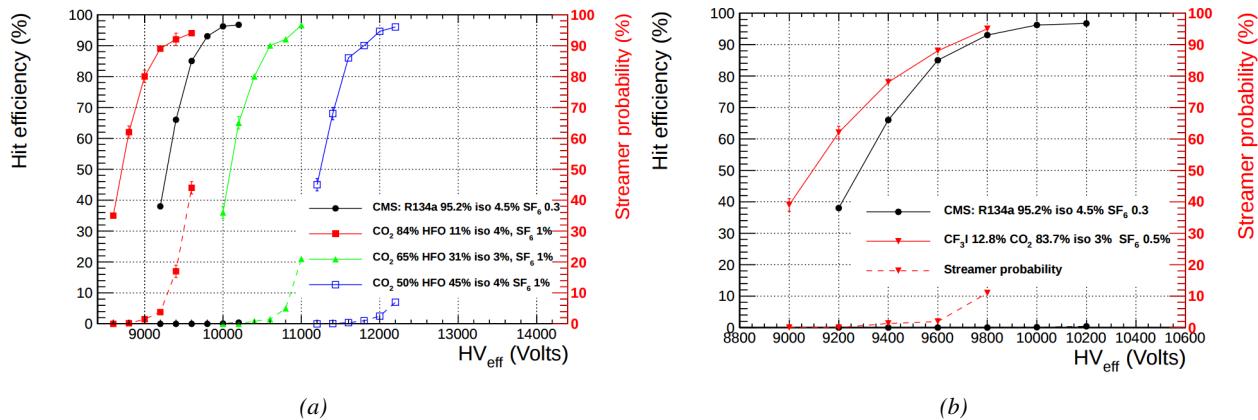


Figure 3.27: The efficiency (solid lines) and streamer probability (dashed lines) of HFO/CO<sub>2</sub> (Figure 3.27a) and CF<sub>3</sub>I/CO<sub>2</sub> (Figure 3.27b) based gas mixtures as a function of the effective high-voltage are compared with the present CMS RPC gas mixture represented in black. The detector used for the study is a single gap RPC with similar properties than CMS RPCs. The streamer probability is defined as the proportion of events with a deposited charge greater than 20 pC.

1899 The status of RPC studies are presented in Figure 3.27 in which the performance (efficiency  
 1900 and streamer probability) of an RPC operated with alternative gas mixtures is compared to the  
 1901 present CMS RPC mixture. Although the efficiency of detectors operated with mixtures containing  
 1902  $CO_2/CF_3I$  or  $CO_2/HFO$  as a replacement for  $C_2H_2F_4$  seem to reach similar levels than which of  
 1903 the detectors operated with the present mixture, the new gas mixtures feature a streamer probability  
 1904 (probability to have very large avalanches whose induced charge is greater than 20 pC) that far ex-  
 1905 ceeds which of the present fluorinated mixture. The SF<sub>6</sub>, being a component of the mixture added  
 1906 in order to reduce the probability of large avalanches thanks to its electronegativity, doesn't seem  
 1907 to prevent streamers as efficiently even when used at levels more than 3 times higher than with the  
 1908 standard CMS RPC mixture. Nevertheless, it is important to note that these results were obtained  
 1909 with a single gap RPC while the use of a double gap RPC would reduce the operation voltage by 200  
 1910 to 300 V, lowering the induced charge. A compromise in between good efficiency and acceptable  
 1911 level of streamer probability and the fine tuned composition of potential replacement gas mixtures

<sup>1912</sup> will be studied using a standard double-gap CMS RPC.

# 4

1913

1914

## Physics of Resistive plate chambers

1915 A Resistive Plate Chamber (RPC) is a gaseous detector used in high-energy physics experiments as  
1916 described in Chapter 3. It has been developed in 1981 by Santonico and Cardarelli [33], under the  
1917 name of *Resistive Plate Counter*, as an alternative to the local-discharge spark counters proposed in  
1918 1978 by Pestov and Fedotovich [34, 35]. Working with spark chambers implied using high-pressure  
1919 gas and high mechanical precision which the RPC simplified by formerly using a gas mixture of  
1920 argon and butane flowed at atmospheric pressure and a constant and uniform electric field propagated  
1921 in between two parallel electrode plates. Moreover, a significant increase in rate capability was  
1922 introduced by the use of electrode plate material with high bulk resistivity, preventing the discharge  
1923 from growing throughout the whole gas gap. Indeed, the effect of using resistive electrodes is that  
1924 the constant electric field is locally canceled out by the development of the discharge, limiting its  
1925 growth.

1926 Through its development history, different operating modes [36–38], gas mixtures [33, 38–43]  
1927 and new detector designs [44–46] have been discovered, leading to further improvement of the rate  
1928 capability of such a detector. The low developing costs and easily achievable large detection ar-  
1929 eas offered by RPCs, as well as the wide range of possible designs, made them a natural choice to  
1930 as muon chambers and/or trigger detectors in multipurpose experiments such as CMS [21] or AT-  
1931 LAS [47], time-of-flight detectors in ALICE [48], calorimeter with CALICE [49] or even detectors  
1932 for volcanic muography with ToMuVol [50].

### 1933 4.1 Principle

1934 RPCs are ionisation detectors composed of two parallel resistive plate electrodes in between which  
1935 a constant electric field is set. The space in between the electrodes, referred to as *gap*, is filled with  
1936 a dense gas that is used to generate primary ionization into the gas volume. The free charge carriers  
1937 (electrons and cations) created by the ionization of the gas molecules are then accelerated towards the  
1938 electrodes by the electric field, as shown in Figure 4.1 [51]. RPCs being passive detectors, a current  
1939 on pick-up copper read-out placed outside of the gas volume is induced by the charge accumulation

1940 during the growth of the avalanche resulting from the acceleration of the charge carriers. As a  
 1941 consequence, the time resolution of the detector is substantially increased as the output signal is  
 1942 generated while the electrons are still in movement. The advantage of a constant electric field, over  
 1943 multi-wire proportional chambers, is that the electrons are being fully accelerated from the moment  
 1944 charge carriers are freed and feel the full strength of the electric field that doesn't depend on the  
 1945 distance to the readout and that the output signal doesn't need for the electrons to be physically  
 1946 collected.

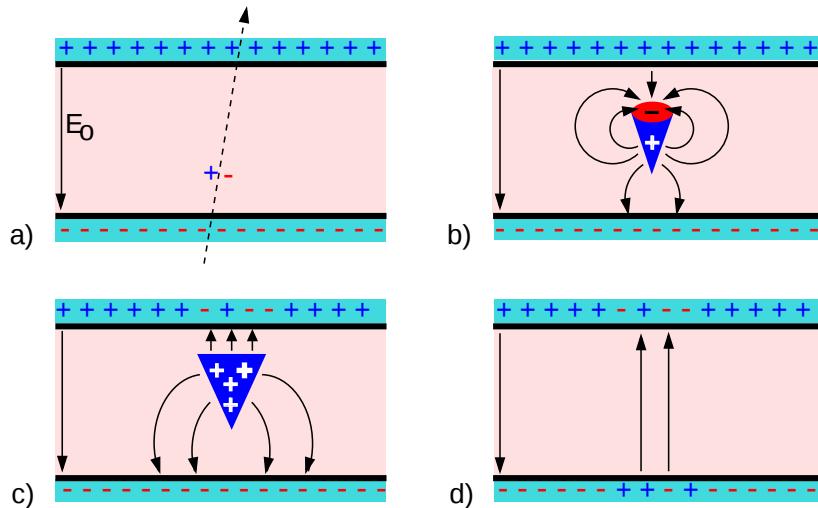


Figure 4.1: Different phases of the avalanche development in the RPC gas volume subjected to a constant electric field  $E_0$ . a) An avalanche is initiated by the primary ionisation caused by the passage of a charged particle through the gas volume. b) Due to its growing size, the avalanche starts to locally influence the electric field. c) The electrons, lighter than the cations reach the anode first. d) The ions reach the cathode. While the charges have not recombined, the electric field in the small region around the avalanche stays affected and locally blinds the detector.

1947 After an avalanche developed in the gas, a time long compared to the development of a discharge  
 1948 is needed to recombine the charge carriers in the electrode material due to their resistivity. This  
 1949 property has the advantage of affecting the local electric field and avoiding sparks in the detector  
 1950 but, on the other hand, the rate capability is intrinsically limited by the time constant  $\tau_{RPC}$  of the  
 1951 detector. Using a quasi-static approximation of Maxwell's equations for weakly conducting media,  
 1952 it can be shown that the time constant  $\tau_{RPC}$  necessary to the charge recombination at the interface  
 1953 in between the electrode and the gas volume is given by the Formula 4.1 [52].

$$\tau_{RPC} = \frac{\epsilon_{electrode} + \epsilon_{gas}}{\sigma_{electrode} + \sigma_{gas}} \quad (4.1)$$

1954 A gas can be assimilated to vacuum, leading to  $\epsilon_{gas} = \epsilon_0$  and  $\sigma_{gas} = 0$ , and the electrodes  
 1955 permittivity and conductivity can be written as  $\epsilon_{electrode} = \epsilon_r \epsilon_0$  and  $\sigma_{electrode} = 1/\rho_{electrode}$ ,  
 1956 showing the strong dependence of the time constant to the electrodes resistivity in Formula 4.2.

$$\tau_{RPC} = (\epsilon_r + 1)\epsilon_0 \times \rho_{electrode} \quad (4.2)$$

1957 Very few materials with a low enough resistivity exist in nature. The resistivity targeted to build

1958    RPCs ranges from  $10^9$  to  $10^{12} \Omega \cdot \text{cm}$ . The most common RPC electrode materials are displayed in  
 1959    Table 4.1. When the doped glass and ceramics can offer short time constants of the order of 1 ms,  
 1960    the developing cost of such materials is quite high due to the very low demand. Thus, High-pressure  
 1961    laminate (HPL) is often the choice for high rate experiments using very large RPC detection areas.  
 1962    Other experiments working at cosmic muon fluxes can safely operate with ordinary float glass.

Material	$\rho_{\text{electrode}} (\Omega \cdot \text{cm})$	$\epsilon_r$	$\tau_{\text{RPC}} (\text{ms})$
Float glass	$10^{12}$	$\sim 7$	$\sim 700$
High-pressure laminate	$10^{10}$ to $10^{12}$	$\sim 6$	$\sim 6$ to 600
Doped glass (LR S)	$10^9$ to $10^{11}$	$\sim 10$	$\sim 1$ to 100
Doped ceramics (SiN/SiC)	$10^9$	$\sim 8.5$	$\sim 1$
Doped ceramics (Ferrite)	$10^8$ to $10^{12}$	$\sim 20$	$\sim 0.2$ to 2000

Table 4.1: Properties of the most used electrode materials for RPCs.

## 1963    4.2 Rate capability and time resolution of Resistive Plate Cham- 1964    bers

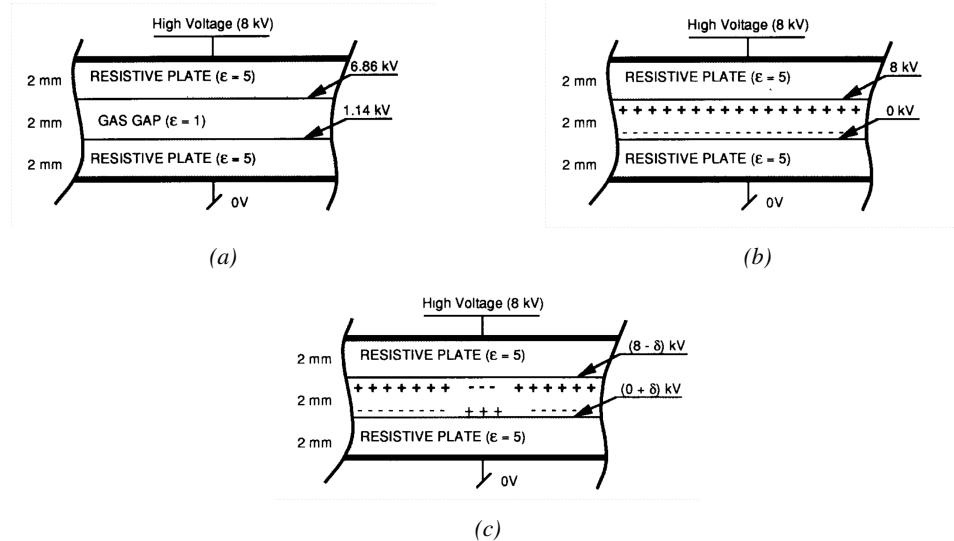
1965    The electrode material plays a key role in the maximum intrinsic rate capability of RPCs. R&D is  
 1966    continuously being done to develop at always cheaper costs material with lower resistivity. Never-  
 1967    theless, the amount of charge released, i.e. the size of the discharge, if reduced leads to a smaller  
 1968    blind area in the detector, increasing the rate capability of the detector. On the other hand, the drift  
 1969    velocity of electrons in the gas volume being quite stable with the applied electric field, the design of  
 1970    a detector and the associated read-out and pulse-processing electronics will be a major component of  
 1971    the time resolution of RPCs. Moreover, the sensitivity of the electronics will also help increasing the  
 1972    rate capability by lowering the gain the gas volume needs to be operated at, increasingly lowering  
 1973    the gas volume in which the signals will develop.

### 1974    4.2.1 Operation modes

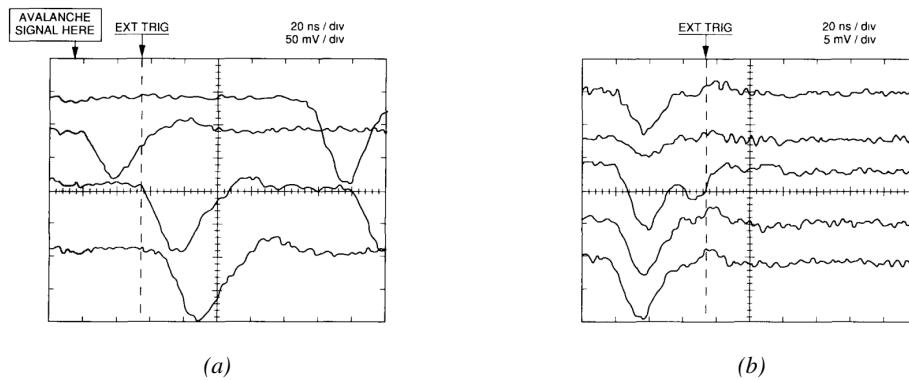
1975    Being a gaseous detector using an accelerating electric field to amplify the signal of primary charge  
 1976    carriers, the RPC can be operated into different modes as the electric field intensity varies. Each  
 1977    mode offers different performances for such a detector, and it will be showed that the operating mode  
 1978    corresponding to the lowest electric field possible is best suited for high rate detectors working in  
 1979    collider experiments.

1980    RPCs where developed early 1980s. At that time it was using an operating mode now referred to  
 1981    as *streamer mode*. Streamers are large discharges that develop in between the 2 electrodes enough to  
 1982    locally discharge the electrodes. If the electric field inside of the gas volume is strong enough, with  
 1983    electrons being fast compared to ions, a large and dense cloud of positive ions will develop nearby  
 1984    the anode and extend toward the cathode while the electrons are being collected, eventually leading  
 1985    to a streamer discharge due to the increase of field seen at the cathode. The field is then strong  
 1986    enough so that electrons are pulled out of the cathode. Electrodes, though they are a unique volume  
 1987    of resistive material, can be assimilated to capacitors. At the moment an electric field is applied in  
 1988    between their outer surfaces, the charge carriers inside of the volume will start moving leading to  
 1989    a situation where there is no voltage across the electrodes and a higher density of negative charges,  
 1990    i.e. electrons, on the inner surface of the cathode. Finally, when a streamer discharge occurs, these

1991 electrons are partially released in the gas volume contributing to increase the discharge strength until  
 1992 the formation of a conductive plasma, the streamer. This can be understood through Figure 4.2 [36].  
 1993 Streamer signals are very convenient in terms of read-out as no further amplification is required  
 1994 with output pulses amplitudes of the order of a few tens to few hundreds of mV as can be seen on  
 1995 Figure 4.3.



*Figure 4.2: Movement of the charge carriers in an RPC. Figure 4.2a: Voltage across an RPC whose electrode have a relative permittivity of 5 at the moment the tension is applied. Figure 4.2b: After the charge carriers moved, the electrodes are charged and there is no voltage drop over the electrodes anymore. The full potential is applied on the gas gap only. Figure 4.2c: The streamer discharge initiated by a charged particle transports electrons and cations towards the anode and cathode respectively.*



*Figure 4.3: Typical oscilloscope pulses in streamer mode (Figure 4.3a) and avalanche mode (Figure 4.3b). In the case of streamer mode, the very small avalanche signal is visible.*

1996 When the electric field is reduced though, the electronic gain is small until the electrons get close  
 1997 enough to the anode and the positive ion cloud is much smaller. The electric field cannot rise to the  
 1998 point a field emission of electrons on the cathode is possible. The resulting signal is weak, of the

order of a few mv as shown on Figure 4.3, and requires amplification. This is the *avalanche mode* of RPC operation. This mode offers a higher rate capability by providing smaller discharges that don't affect the electrodes charge and are more locally contained in the gas volume as was demonstrated by Crotty with Figure 4.4 [36]. The detector only stays locally blind the time the charge carriers are recombined and there is no need for electrode recharge which is a long process affecting a large portion of the detector. Another advantage of avalanche signals over streamer is the great time consistency. Figure 4.3 shows very clearly that avalanche signals have a very small time jitter. Thus, using such a mode is a natural choice for experiments in which the detectors are required to have a high detection rate.

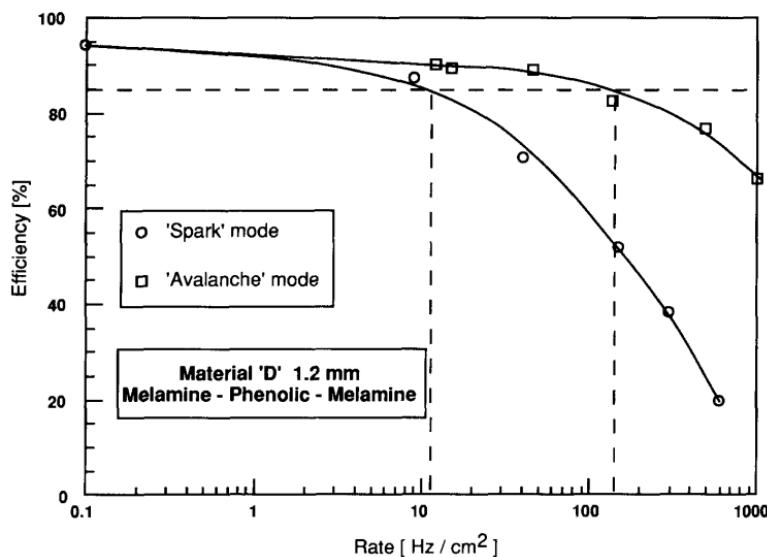
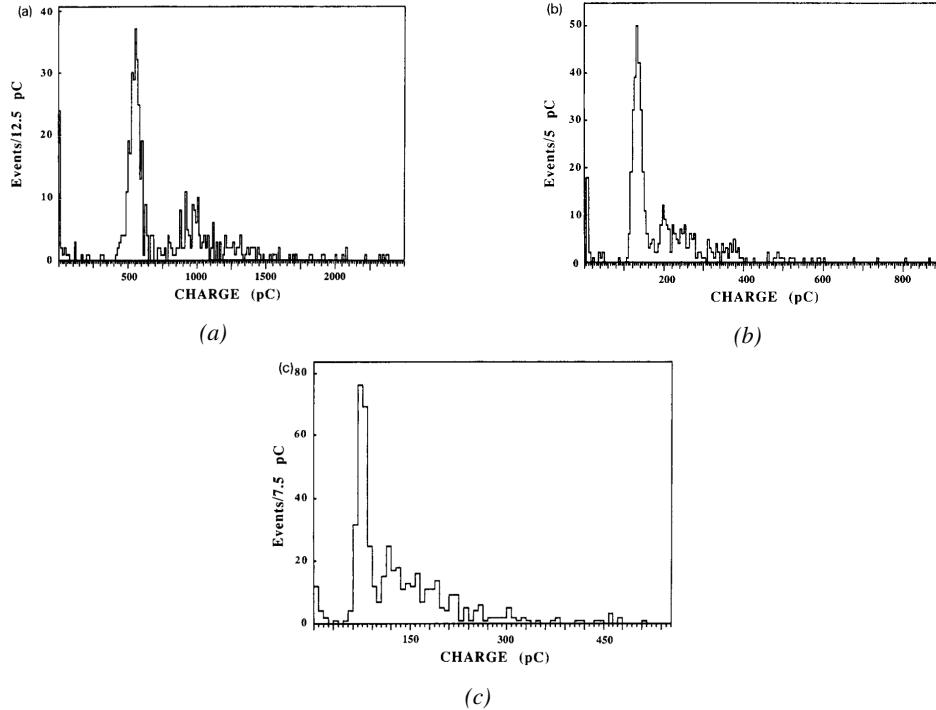


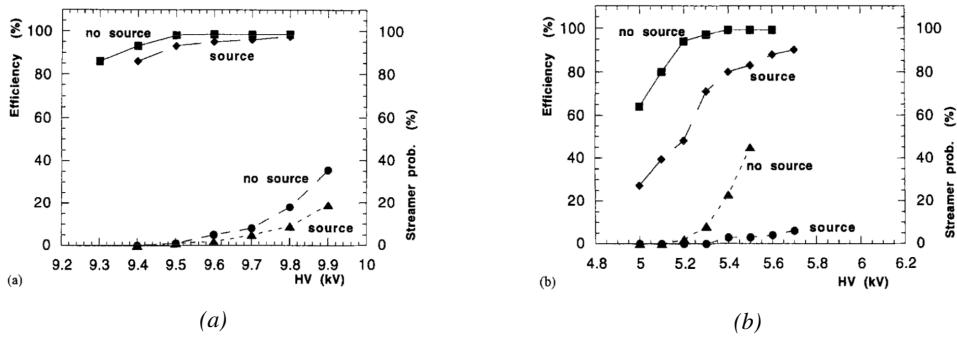
Figure 4.4: Rate capability comparison for the streamer and avalanche mode of operation. An order of magnitude in rate capability for a maximal efficiency drop of 10% is gained by using the avalanche mode over the streamer mode.

#### 4.2.2 Standard gas mixture for RPCs operated in collider experiments

The first RPC working in streamer mode was operated with a 50/50 mixture of argon and butane [33], a standard mixture used at that time in multi-wire proportional chambers, taking profit of the good effective Townsend coefficient of argon to maximize the number of primary charge carriers freed in the gas by ionizing particles and of the quenching properties of butane. Before the discovery of the avalanche mode of RPC operation and concerned about the rate capability of RPCs operated in streamer mode, the performance improvement of the detectors through the increase of fast charge ratio in the signal development ,decreasing the charge induced per avalanche as can be seen through Figure 4.5, was studied by adding Freon based gases, such as  $CF_3Br$ , into the typical  $Ar/C_4H_{10}$  gas mixture was studied and showed that a lower induced charge could lead to an improvement the rate capability [39]. This consideration lead to the discovery of the avalanche mode which confirmed that the smaller the induced charge, the better the rate capability of the RPCs [36]. This discovery could happen thanks to the increased number of lower induced charge events allowed by adding a fraction of strong quencher in the gas mixture.



*Figure 4.5: Comparison of the charge distribution of signals induced by cosmic muons in an RPC operated with a gas mixture of argon, butane and bromotrifluoromethane (CF<sub>3</sub>Br). The Ar/C<sub>4</sub>H<sub>10</sub> is kept constant at 60/40 in volume while the total amount of CF<sub>3</sub>Br in the mixture is varied: 0% (Figure 4.5a), 4% (Figure 4.5b) and 8% (Figure 4.5c) [39].*



*Figure 4.6: Comparison of the efficiency and streamer probability, defined as the fraction of events with an induced charge 10 times larger than that of the average avalanche, with and without irradiation by a 24 GBq <sup>137</sup>Cs source of an RPC successively operated with a 90/10 mixture C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>2</sub>F<sub>4</sub>/i-C<sub>4</sub>H<sub>10</sub> (Figure 4.6a) and a 70/5/10/15 mixture of Ar/i-C<sub>4</sub>H<sub>10</sub>/CO<sub>2</sub>/C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>2</sub>F<sub>4</sub> (Figure 4.6b) [40].*

From this moment onward, more and more studies were conducted in order to find a gas mixture that would allow for the best suppression of streamers for the benefit of low charge avalanches. Most R&D groups working with narrow gaps started using freon-based gas mixtures while users of wide gap RPCs kept using Ar/CO<sub>2</sub> based mixtures. The differences in between narrow and wide gaps will

be later discussed in Section 4.2.3. The  $CF_3Br$  having a high GWP, tetrafluoroethane ( $C_2H_2F_4$ ) was preferred to it as more suitable ecofriendly gas in the middle of the 90s. An advantage of this new freon component is that it featured a high primary ionization and a low operating voltage, as reported by Cardarelli [38]. Thus, the new gas mixtures used were mainly composed of tetrafluoroethane alone with lower content of isobutane in order to reduce the flammability of the mixtures in the case it were to be used in accelerator experiments for safety reasons. Performance and models about such mixtures were discussed in papers of Abbrescia [40, 41] and showed a better suitability of such a gas mixture, with respect to argon based ones, for operations with high radiation backgrounds leading to a need for high rate capability of the detectors, as can be seen from Figures 4.6 and 4.7. Indeed, although the operating voltage of a tetrafluoroethane based mixture is higher than which of an argon based mixture but the efficiency under irradiation is more stable, the voltage range with negligible streamer probability is much wider, and the fast charge ratio available is much greater, providing with more stable operation of the detector.

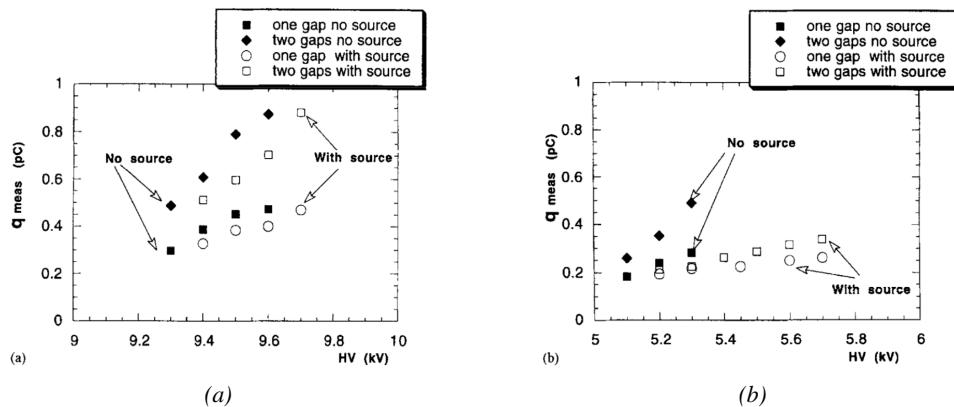


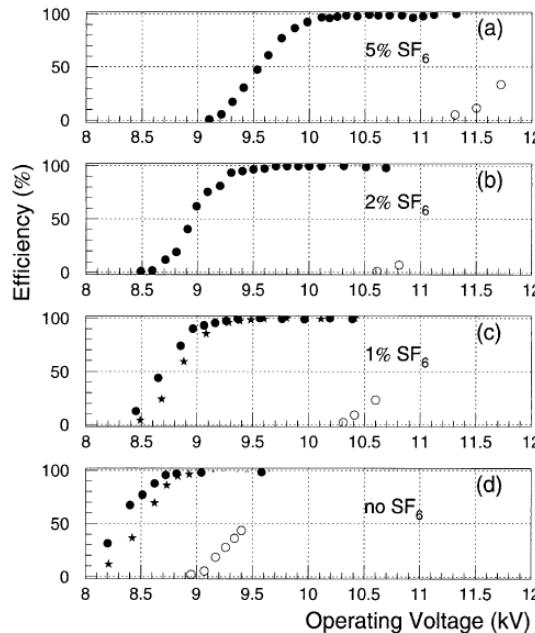
Figure 4.7: Comparison of the fast charge ratio with and without irradiation by a 24 GBq  $^{137}Cs$  source of an RPC successively operated with a 90/10 mixture  $C_2H_2F_4/i-C_4H_{10}$  (Figure 4.7a) and a 70/5/10/15 mixture of  $Ar/i-C_4H_{10}/CO_2/C_2H_2F_4$  (Figure 4.7b). The results are provided for both single gap and double gap operation [40].

Aside of the improvement of the rate capability through linseed oil surface treatment of HPL electrodes, which allowed for a lower intrinsic noise rate and dark current of the detectors by improving the smoothness of the electrodes surface [53], it was later found that the streamers could be further suppressed by adding an electronegative compound into the gas mixture. The benefits of adding  $SF_6$  in order to push the transitions from avalanche to streamers towards high voltages has been discussed in 1998 [42, 43] and eventually the high rate RPC destined to be used in accelerator physics would unanimously start using this compound into RPC gas mixtures. Being able to control the creation of streamers allows for slower ageing of the detector and lower power consumption as the currents driven by the electrodes consecutively to the induced charges would be smaller. In summary, the typical gas mixture RPCs are operated with is generally composed of the following 3 gas compounds, although, as mentioned in Chapter 3.5, research is being conducted into new more ecofriendly gas mixture using gases with a much lower Global Warming Potential:

- Tetrafluoroethane ( $C_2F_4H_2$ ), also referred to as *Freon* or *R134a*, is the principal compound of the RPC gas mixtures, with a typical fraction above 90%. It is used for its high effective

2053 Townsend coefficient and the great average fast charge that allows to operate the detector  
 2054 with a high threshold with respect to argon, for example, that has similar effective Townsend  
 2055 coefficient but suffers from a lower fast charge. To operate with similar conditions, argon  
 2056 would require a higher electric field leading to a higher fraction of streamers, thus limiting the  
 2057 rate capability of the detector [40, 41].

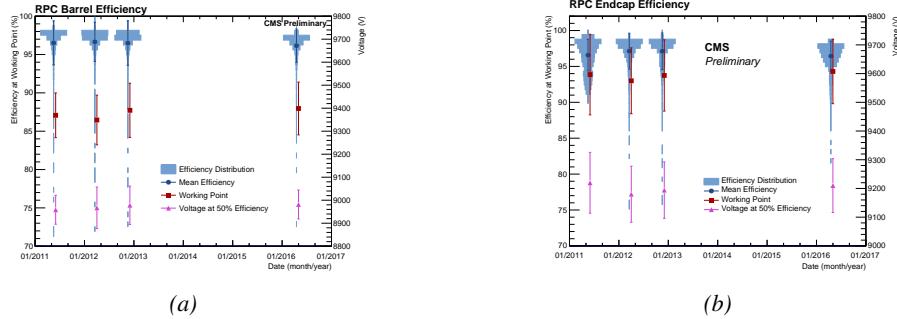
- 2058 • Isobutane ( $i\text{-C}_4\text{H}_{10}$ ), only present in a few percent in the gas mixtures, is used for its UV  
 2059 quenching properties [54] helping to prevent streamers due to UV photon emission during the  
 2060 avalanche growth.
- 2061 • Sulfur hexafluoride, ( $\text{SF}_6$ ), simply referred to as  $\text{SF}_6$ , is used in very little quantities for its  
 2062 high electronegativity. Excess of electrons are being absorbed by the compound and streamers  
 2063 are suppressed [42, 43]. Nevertheless, a fraction of  $\text{SF}_6$  higher than 1% will not bring  
 2064 any extra benefice in terms of streamer cancelation power but will lead to higher operating  
 2065 voltage [42], as can be understood through Figure 4.8.



2066 *Figure 4.8: Efficiency (circles and stars with 30 mV and 100 mV thresholds respectively) and streamer prob-  
 2067 ability (opened circles) as function of the operating voltatge of a 2 mm single gap HPL RPC flushed with a gas  
 2068 mixture containing (a) 5%, (b) 2%, (c) 1% and (d) no  $\text{SF}_6$  [42].*

2069 In the last steps of R&D, the gas mixture of CMS RPCs was forseen to be a 96.2/3.5/0.3 compo-  
 2070 sition of  $\text{C}_2\text{H}_2\text{F}_4/\text{i-C}_4\text{H}_{10}/\text{SF}_6$  [55] but finally it was slightly changed into a 95.2/4.5/0.3 mixture  
 2071 of the same gases [56]. A summary of the operation performance of the RPCs since the start of LHC  
 and of CMS data taking is given in Figure 4.9 [57]. The performance of the detectors is regularly  
 monitored and the operating voltages updated in order to obtain a very stable performance through  
 time. Nevertheless, the detectors will face new challenges during Phase-II during which they will

exposed to more extreme radiation conditions. Description of the longevity tests with extreme irradiation and the conclusions regarding the operation of the present RPC system will be given in Chapter 5.



*Figure 4.9: Evolution of the efficiency, working voltage, and voltage at 50% of maximum efficiency for CMS Barrel (Figure 4.9a) and Endcap (Figure 4.9b) RPCs obtained through yearly voltage scans since 2011. The working voltage of each RPC is updated after each voltage scan to ensure optimal operation [57].*

It was already discussed that in the future, it is likely that the use of freon gases could be banned. As potential replacement for tetrafluoroethane was proposed the trifluoriodomethane ( $CF_3I$ ), a molecule with similar properties than  $CF_3Br$  which was replaced by the tetrafluoroethane, and the 1,3,3,3-tetrafluoropropene ( $C_3H_2F_4$  or HFO-1234re), a molecule with similar properties than the actual tetrafluoroethane and proposed as a replacement in refrigerating and air conditioning systems [58]. These 2 gases have stronger quenching properties than  $C_2H_2F_4$  which means a much stronger electric field needs to be applied on the parallel electrodes of the RPCs in order to reach full efficiency. But the power supply system of CMS RPC is limited to 15 kV and so is ATLAS power supply system which is participating in a joined R&D. As can be seen from Figure 3.27, reducing the working voltage was achieved by mixing the potential replacements together with  $CO_2$ . Introducing carbon dioxide into the mixture while keeping similar levels of isobutane and  $SF_6$  increases the streamer probability and the best candidate identified for a compromise in between low enough working voltage and acceptable levels of streamers corresponds to a mixture containing 50% of  $CO_2$ , 45% of HFO, 4% of isobutane and 1% of  $SF_6$  but is not yet considered satisfactory. On the other hand, no good replacement for  $SF_6$  has yet been identified. With its very high Global Warming Potential (23900), even small fraction of this gas in the mixture (it only represents 0.3% of CMS standard mixture but more than 5% of its overall GWP) substantially increase the danger for the environment. Although finding a replacement for this gas is less critical than for the tetrafluoroethane composing more than 90% of usual RPC standard mixtures, the problem will need to be addressed.

### 4.2.3 Detector designs and performance

Different RPC design have been used and each of them present its own advantages. Historically, the first type of RPC to have been developed is what is referred now to *narrow gap* RPC [33, 59]. After the avalanche mode has been discovered [36], it has been proven that increasing the width of the gas gap lead to higher rate capability, due to lower charge deposition per avalanche, and lower power dissipation [59]. Nevertheless, by increasing the gas gap width, the time resolution of

2101 the detector decreases. This is a natural result if the increase of active gas volume in the detector is  
 2102 taken into account. Indeed, for a given threshold, only the small fraction of gas closest to the cathode  
 2103 will provide enough gain to have a detectable signal. In the case of a wider gas volume, the active  
 2104 region is then larger and a larger time jitter is introduced with the variation of starting position of the  
 2105 avalanche, as discussed in [44]. To solve improve both the time resolution and the rate capability,  
 2106 different methods were used trying to get advantages of both narrow and wide gap RPCs.

#### 2107 4.2.3.1 Double-gap RPC

2108 Double-gap RPCs are made out of 2 narrow RPC detectors. The 2 RPC gaps are stacked on top of  
 2109 each other as shown in Figure 4.10. This detector layout, popularized by the two multipurpose ex-  
 2110 periments CMS [21] and ATLAS [47] at LHC, can be used as an OR system in which each individual  
 2111 chamber participates in the output signal. The gain of such a detector is greatly reduced with respect  
 2112 to single-gap RPCs with an efficiency plateau reached at lower voltage, as visible on Figure 4.11.

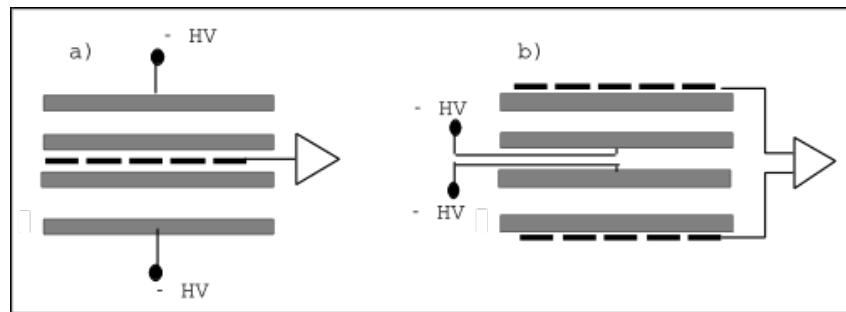


Figure 4.10: Possible double-gap RPC layouts: a) "standard" 1D double-gap RPC, as used in CMS experiment, where the anodes are facing each other and a 1D read-out plane is sandwiched in between them, b) double read-out double-gap RPC as used in ATLAS experiment, where the cathodes are facing each other and 2 read-out planes are used on the outer surfaces. This last layout can offer the possibility to use a 2D reconstruction by using orthogonal read-out planes.

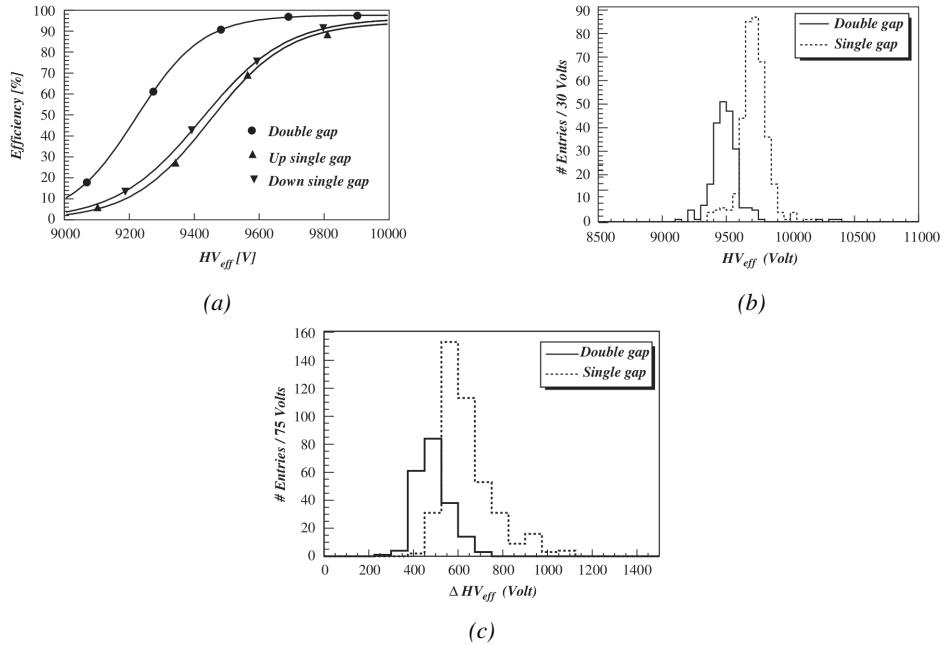
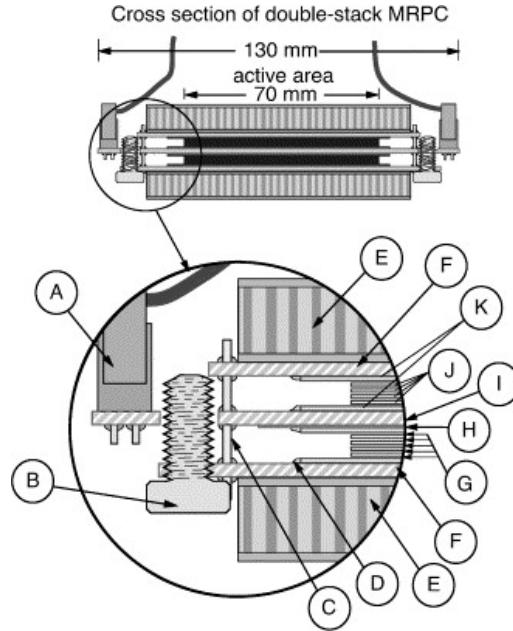


Figure 4.11: Comparison of performance of CMS double and single gap RPCs using cosmic muons [55].  
 Figure 4.11a: Comparison of efficiency sigmoids. Figure 4.11b: Voltage distribution at 95% of maximum efficiency. Figure 4.11c:  $\Delta_{10\%}^{90\%}$  distribution.

### 2113 4.2.3.2 Multigap RPC (MRPC)

2114 MRPCs are layouts in which floating sub electrode plates are placed into a wide gap RPC to divide  
 2115 the gas volume and create a sum of narrow gaps [44, 45]. The time resolution of such a detector can  
 2116 reach of few tens of ps, with gas gaps of the order of a few hundred  $\mu m$  as shown in Figure 4.12  
 2117 representing ALICE Time-of-flight (ToF) MRPCs.



*Figure 4.12: Presentation of ALICE MRPC using 250  $\mu\text{m}$  gas gaps, 620  $\mu\text{m}$  outer glass electrodes and 550  $\mu\text{m}$  inner floating electrodes. More details on the labels are given in [60].*

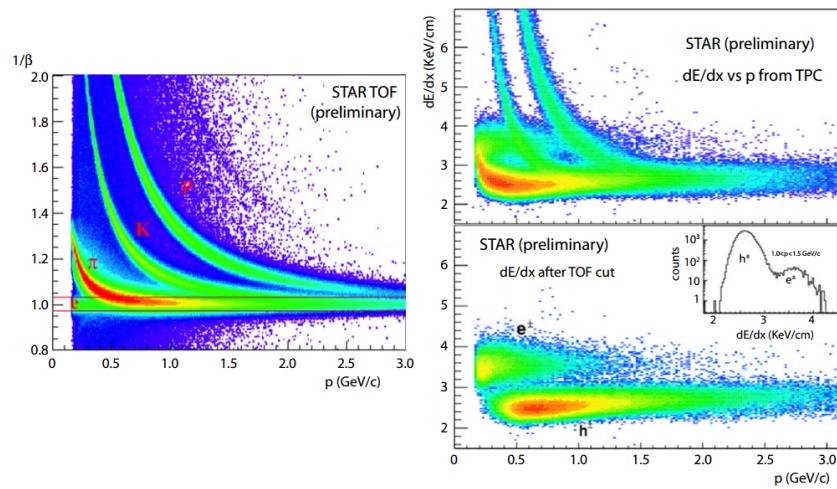
Sometimes used as a double multigap RPC, taking advantage of the OR of double gap RPCs, the MRPC is mainly used as ToF detector [60–64] due to its excellent timing properties that allow to perform particle identification as explained by Williams in [65]. The principle of particle identification using ToF is simply the measurement of the velocity of a particle. Indeed, particles are defined by their mass (for the parameter of interest here, their electric charge being measured using the bending angle of the particles traveling through a magnetic field) and this mass can be calculated by measuring the velocity  $\beta$  and momentum of the particle:

$$\beta = \frac{p}{\sqrt{p^2 + m^2}} \quad (4.3)$$

Intuitively, it is trivial to understand that 2 different particles having the same momentum will have a different velocity due to the mass difference and thus a different flight time  $T_1$  and  $T_2$  through the detector and this is used to separate and identify particles. The better the time resolution of the ToF system used, the stronger will the separation be:

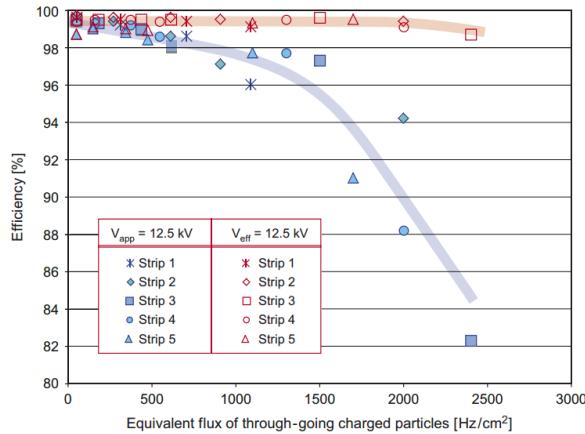
$$T = \frac{L}{v} = \frac{L}{c \cdot \beta}, \quad \Delta T = T_1 - T_2 = \frac{L}{c} \left( \sqrt{1 + m_1^2/p^2} - \sqrt{1 + m_2^2/p^2} \right) \cong (m_1^2 - m_2^2) \frac{L}{2cp^2} \quad (4.4)$$

An example of particle identification is given for the case of STAR experiment in Figure 4.13.



*Figure 4.13: Particle identification applied to electrons in the STAR experiment. The identification is performed combining ToF and  $dE/dx$  measurements [65].*

Another benefice of using such small gas gaps is the strong reduction of the average avalanche volume and thus of the blind spot on MRPCs leading to an improved rate capability. Multigaps can sustain backgrounds of several kHz/cm<sup>2</sup> as demonstrated in Figure 4.14.



*Figure 4.14: Comparison of the detector performance of ALICE ToF MRPC [66] at fixed applied voltage (in blue) and at fixed effective voltage (in red). The effective voltage is kept fixed by increasing the applied voltage accordingly to the current drawn by the detector.*

#### 4.2.3.3 Charge distribution and performance limitations

The direct consequence of the different RPC layouts is a variation of intrinsic time resolution of the RPC as the gap size decreases. An advantage is given to multigaps whose design use sub-millimeter gas volumes providing very consistent signals.

On the charge spectrum point of view, each layout has its own advantages. When the double-gap has the highest induced over drifting charge ratio, as seen in Figure 4.15, the multigap has a charge

2139 spectrum strongly detached from the origin, as visible in Figure 4.16. A high induced over drifting  
 2140 charge ratio means that the double gap can be safely operated at high threshold or that at similar  
 2141 threshold it can be operated with a twice smaller drifting charge, meaning a higher rate capability.  
 2142 On the other hand, the strong detachment of the charge spectrum from the origin in the MRPC case  
 2143 allows to reach a higher efficiency with increasing threshold as most of the induced charge is not low  
 2144 due to the convolution of several single gap spectra. The range of stable efficiency increases with  
 2145 the number of gap, as presented in Figure 4.17.

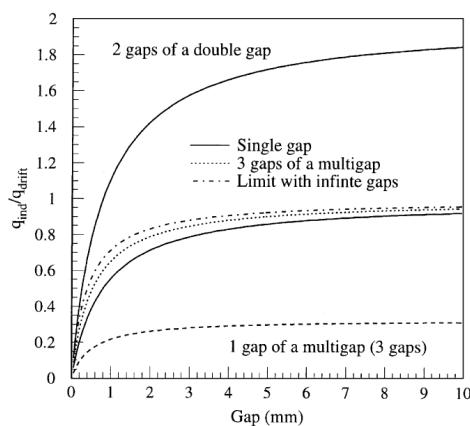


Figure 4.15: Ratio between total induced and drifting charge have been simulated for single gap, double-gap and multigap layouts [67]. The total induced charge for a double-gap RPC is a factor 2 higher than for a multigap.

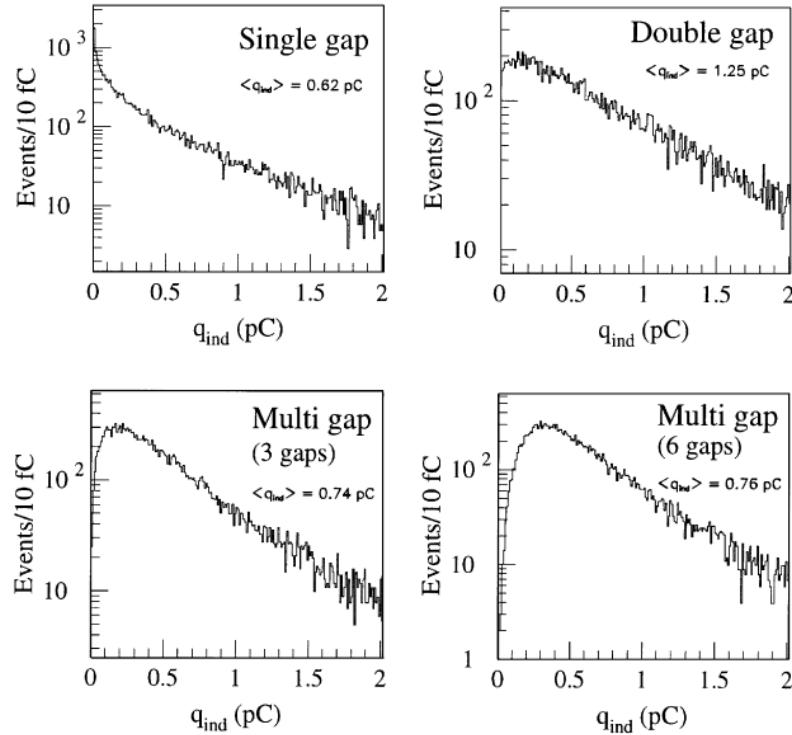


Figure 4.16: Charge spectra have been simulated for single gap, double-gap and multigap layouts [67]. It appears that when single gap shows a decreasing spectrum, double and multigap layouts exhibit a spectrum whose peak is detached from the origin. The detachment gets stronger as the number of gaps increases.

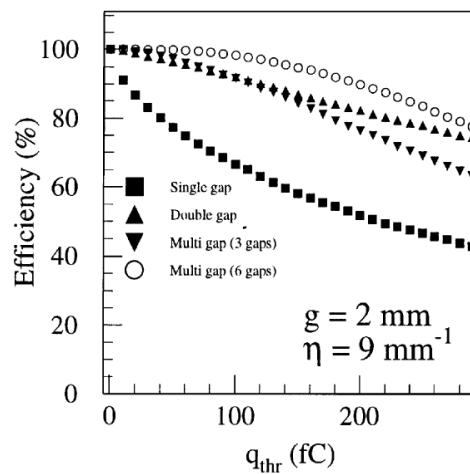


Figure 4.17: The maximal theoretical efficiency is simulated for single gap, double-gap and multigap layouts [67] at a constant gap thickness of 2 mm and using an effective Townsend coefficient of  $9 \text{ mm}^{-1}$ .

2146 **4.3 Signal formation**

2147 **4.3.1 Electron drift velocity**

2148 Talk about the electron drift velocity and mention the time resolution of RPCs.

2149 **4.4 Gas transport parameters**

# 5

2150

2151

2152

## Longevity studies and Consolidation of the present CMS RPC subsystem

### 2153 5.1 Resistive Plate Chambers at CMS

#### 2154 5.1.1 Overview

2155 The Resistive Plate Chambers (RPC) system, located in both barrel and endcap regions, provides a  
2156 fast, independent muon trigger with a looser  $p_T$  threshold over a large portion of the pseudorapidity  
2157 range ( $|\eta| < 1.6$ ) [add reconstruction].

2158

2159 During High-Luminosity LHC (HL-LHC) operations the expected conditions in terms of back-  
2160 ground and pile-up will make the identification and correct  $P_T$  assignment a challenge for the Muon  
2161 system. The goal of RPC upgrade is to provide additional hits to the Muon system with precise tim-  
2162 ing. All these informations will be elaborated by the trigger system in a global way enhancing the  
2163 performance of the trigger in terms of efficiency and rate control. The RPC Upgrade is based on two  
2164 projects: an improved Link Board System and the extension of the RPC coverage up to  $|\eta| = 2.4$ .  
2165 [FIXME 2.4 or 2.5?]

2166 The Link Board system, that will be described in section xxx, is responsible to process, syn-  
2167 chronize and zero-suppress the signals coming from the RPC front end boards. The Link Board  
2168 components have been produced between 2006 and 2007 and will be subjected to aging and failure  
2169 in the long term. The upgraded Link Board system will overcome the aging problems described in  
2170 section xxx and will allow for a more precise timing information to the RPC hits from 25 to 1 ns [ref  
2171 section xxx].

2172 The extension of the RPC system up to  $|\eta| = 2.1$  was already planned in the CMS TDR [ref  
2173 cmstdr] and staged because of budget limitations and expected background rates higher than the rate  
2174 capability of the present CMS RPCs in that region. An extensive R&D program has been done in  
2175 order to develop an improved RPC that fulfills the CMS requirements. Two new RPC layers in the  
2176 innermost ring of stations 3 and 4 will be added with benefits to the neutron-induced background

2177 reduction and efficiency improvement for both trigger and offline reconstruction.

### 2178 5.1.2 The present RPC system

2179 The RPC system is organized in 4 stations called RB1 to RB4 in the barrel region, and RE1 to RE4  
 2180 in the endcap region. The innermost barrel stations, RB1 and RB2, are instrumented with 2 layers  
 2181 of RPCs facing the innermost (RB1in and RB2in) and outermost (RB1out and RB2out) sides of the  
 2182 DT chambers. Every chamber is then divided from the read-out point of view into 2 or 3  $\eta$  partitions  
 2183 called “rolls”. The RPC system consist of 480 barrel chambers and 576 endcap chambers. Details  
 2184 on the geometry are discussed in the paper [ref to geo paper].

2185 The CMS RPC chamber is a double-gap, operated in avalanche mode to ensure reliable operation  
 2186 at high rates. Each RPC gap consists of two 2-mm-thick resistive High-Pressure Laminate (HPL)  
 2187 plates separated by a 2-mm-thick gas gap. The outer surface of the HPL plates is coated with a thin  
 2188 conductive graphite layer, and a voltage is applied. The RPCs are operated with a 3-component,  
 2189 non-flammable gas mixture consisting of 95.2% freon ( $C_2H_2F_4$ , known as R134a), 4.5% isobutane  
 2190 ( $i-C_4H_{10}$ ), and 0.3% sulphur hexafluoride ( $SF_6$ ) with a relative humidity of 40% - 50%. Readout  
 2191 strips are aligned in  $\eta$  between the 2 gas gaps. [\[Add a sentence on FEBs.\]](#)

2192 The discriminated signals coming from the Front End boards feed via twisted cables (10 to 20 m  
 2193 long) the Link Board System located in UXC on the balconies around the detector. The Link System  
 2194 consist of the 1376 Link Boards (LBs) and the 216 Control Boards (CBs), placed in 108 Link Boxes.  
 2195 The Link Box is a custom crate (6U high) with 20 slots (for two CBs and eighteen LBs). The Link  
 2196 Box contains custom backplane to which the cables from the chambers are connected, as well as the  
 2197 cables providing the LBs and CBs power supply and the cables for the RPC FEBs control with use  
 2198 of the I2C protocol (trough the CB). The backplane itself contains only connectors (and no any other  
 2199 electronic devices).

2200 The Link Board has 96 input channels (one channel corresponds to one RPC strip). The input  
 2201 signals are the  $\sim 100$  ns binary pulses which are synchronous to the RPC hits, but not to the LHC  
 2202 clock (which drives the entire CMS electronics). Thus the first step of the FEB signals processing  
 2203 is synchronization, i.e. assignment of the signals to the BXes (25 ns periods). Then the data are  
 2204 compressed with a simple zero-suppressing algorithm (the input channels are grouped into 8 bit  
 2205 partitions, only the partitions with at least one nonzero bit are selected for each BX). Next, the non-  
 2206 empty partitions are time-multiplexed i.e. if there are more than one such partition in a given BX,  
 2207 they are sent one-by-one in consecutive BXes. The data from 3 neighbouring LBs are concentrated  
 2208 by the middle LB which contains the optical transmitter for sending them to the USC over a fiber at  
 2209 1.6 Gbps.

2210 The Control Boards provide the communication of the control software with the LBs via the  
 2211 FEC/CCU system. The CBs are connected into token rings, each ring consists of 12 CBs of one  
 2212 detector tower and a FEC mezzanine board placed on the CCS board located in the VME crate in  
 2213 the USC. In total, there are 18 rings in the entire Link System. The CBs also perform automatic  
 2214 reloading of the LB's firmware which is needed in order to avoid accumulation of the radiation  
 2215 induced SEUs in the LBs firmware.

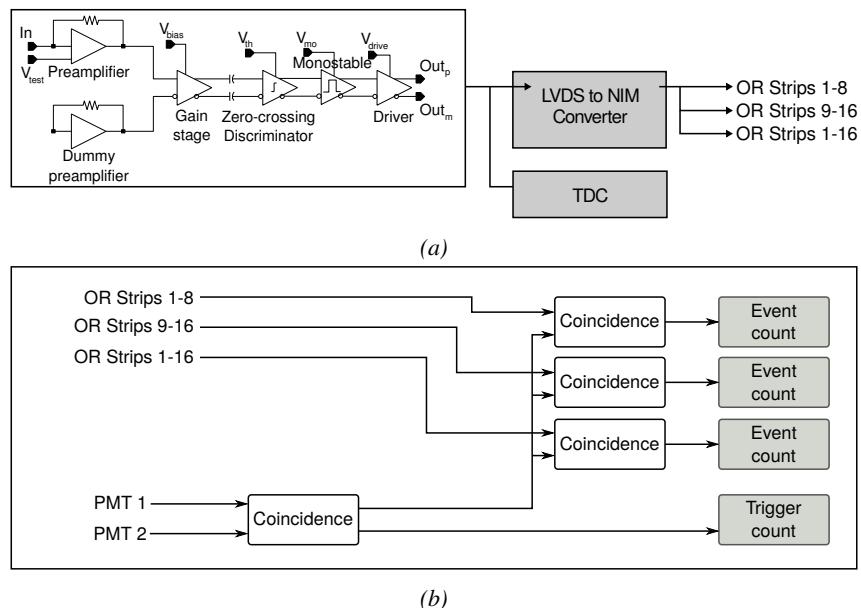
2216 Both LBs and CB are based on the Xilinx Spartan III FPGAs, the CB additionally contains  
 2217 radiation-tolerant (FLASH based) FPGA Actel ProAsicPlus.

2218 The High Voltage power system is located in USC, not exposed to radiation and easily accessible  
 2219 for any reparation. A single HV channel powers 2 RPC chambers both in the barrel and endcap  
 2220 regions. The Low Voltage boards are located in UXC on the balconies and provide the voltage to the

2221 front end electronics.

### 2222 5.1.3 Pulse processing of CMS RPCs

2223 Signals induced by cosmic particle in the RPC strips are shaped by standard CMS RPC Front-End  
2224 Electronics (FEE) following the scheme of Figure 5.1. On a first stage, analogic signals are amplified  
2225 and then sent to the Constant Fraction Discriminator (CFD) described in Figure 5.2. At the end of  
2226 the chain, 100 ns long pulses are sent in the LVDS output. These output signal are sent on one side to  
2227 a V1190A Time-to-Digital Converter (TDC) module from CAEN and on the other to an OR module  
2228 to count the number of detected signals. Trigger and hit coïncidences are monitored using scalers.  
2229 The TDC is used to store the data into ROOT files. These files are thus analysed to understand the  
2230 detectors performance.



*Figure 5.1: Signals from the RPC strips are shaped by the FEE described on Figure 5.1a. Output LVDS signals are then read-out by a TDC module connected to a computer or converted into NIM and sent to scalers. Figure 5.1b describes how these converted signals are put in coincidence with the trigger.*

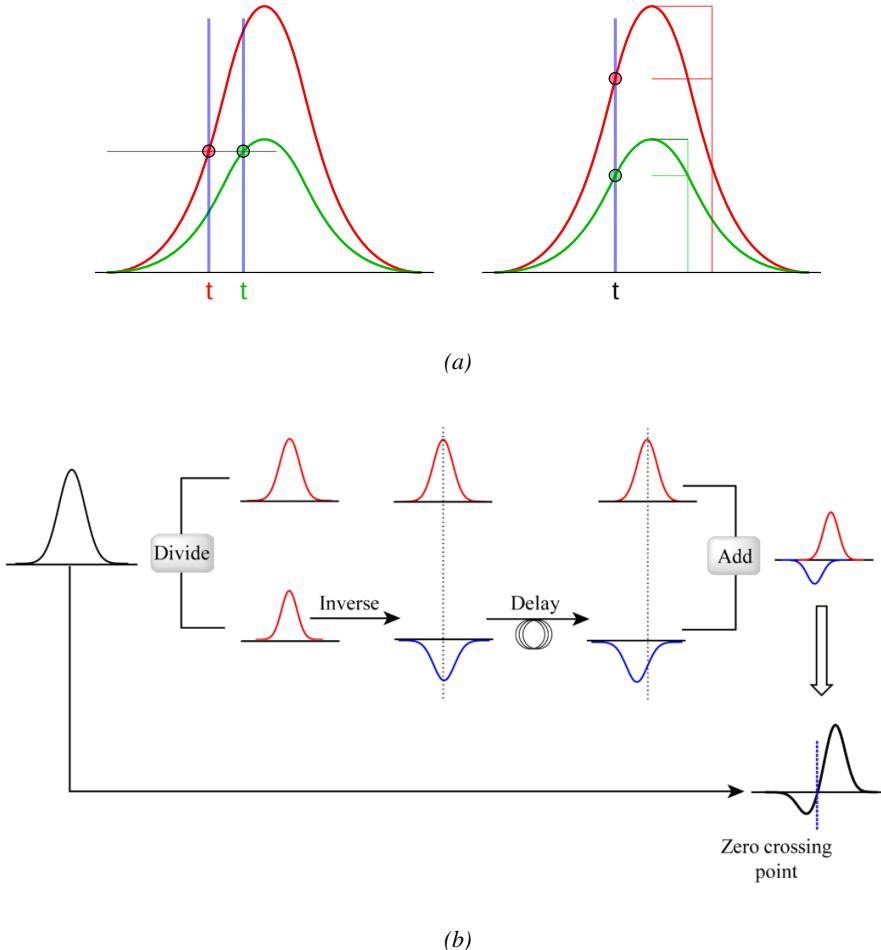


Figure 5.2: Description of the principle of a CFD. A comparison of threshold triggering (left) and constant fraction triggering (right) is shown in Figure 5.2a. Constant fraction triggering is obtained thanks to zero-crossing technique as explained in Figure 5.2b. The signal arriving at the input of the CFD is split into three components. A first one is delayed and connected to the inverting input of a first comparator. A second component is connected to the noninverting input of this first comparator. A third component is connected to the noninverting input of another comparator along with a threshold value connected to the inverting input. Finally, the output of both comparators is fed through an AND gate.

## 5.2 Testing detectors under extreme conditions

The upgrade from LHC to HL-LHC will increase the peak luminosity from  $10^{34} \text{ cm}^{-2} \text{ s}^{-1}$  to reach  $5 \times 10^{34} \text{ cm}^{-2} \text{ s}^{-1}$ , increasing in the same way the total expected background to which the RPC system will be subjected to. Composed of low energy gammas and neutrons from  $p\text{-}p$  collisions, low momentum primary and secondary muons, puch-through hadrons from calorimeters, and particles produced in the interaction of the beams with collimators, the background will mostly affect the regions of CMS that are the closest to the beam line, i.e. the RPC detectors located in the endcaps. [To update.]

2239

2240 The 2016 data allowed to study the values of the background rate in all RPC system. In Figure 2241 5.3, the distribution of the chamber background hit rate per unit area is shown at a luminosity 2242 of  $5 \times 10^{34} \text{ cm}^{-2} \cdot \text{s}^{-1}$  linearly extrapolating from data collected in 2016 [ref mentioning the linear 2243 dependency of rate vs lumi]. The maximum rate per unit area at HL-LHC conditions is expected to 2244 be of the order of  $600 \text{ Hz/cm}^2$  (including a safety factor 3). Nevertheless, Fluka simulations have 2245 conducted in order to understand the background at HL-LHC conditions. The comparison to the 2246 data has shown, in Figure 5.4, a discrepancy of a factor 2 even though the order of magnitude is 2247 consistent. [Understand mismatch.]

2248

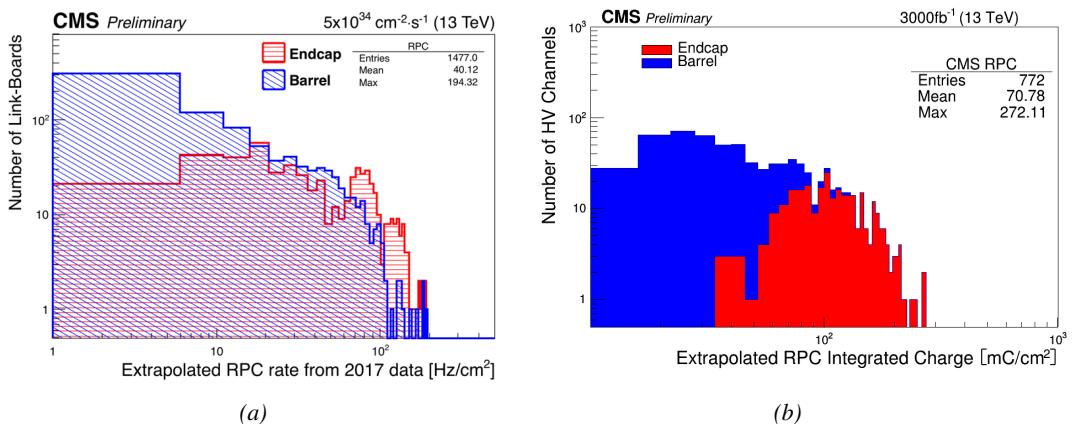


Figure 5.3: Figure 5.3a: The integrated charge per region (Barrel, Endcap) is extrapolated to HL-LHC integrated luminosity ( $3000 \text{ fb}^{-1}$ ) using the data accumulated in 2016 in every HV channels. Figure 5.3b: The hit rate per region (Barrel, Endcap) is linearly extrapolated to HL-LHC highest instantaneous luminosity ( $5 \times 10^{34} \text{ cm}^{-2} \text{s}^{-1}$ ) using the rate as a function of instantaneous luminosity recorded by RPCs in 2017 showing a linear dependence.

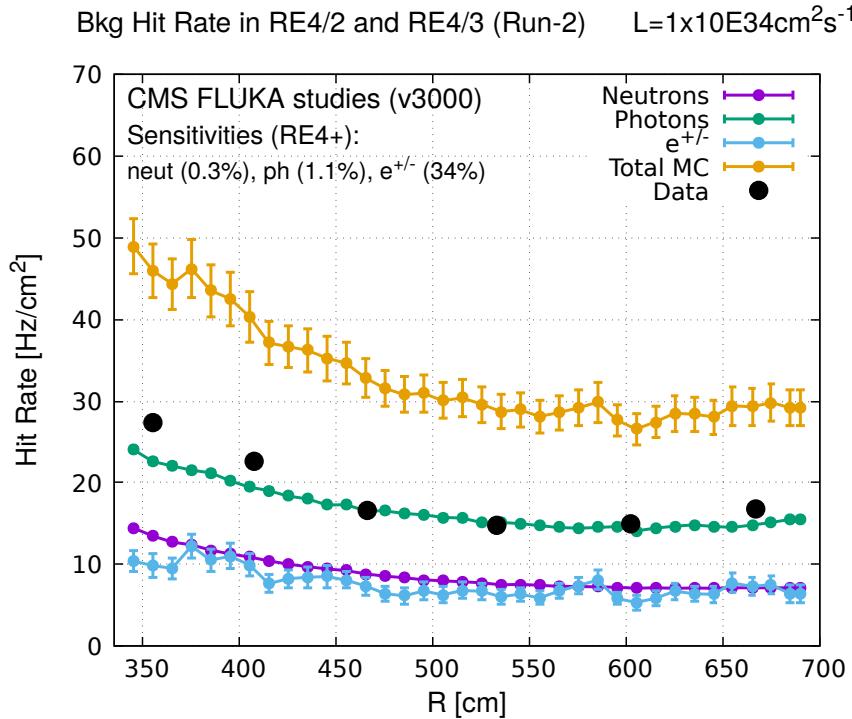


Figure 5.4: Background Fluka simulation compared to 2016 Data at  $L = 10^{34} \text{ cm}^{-2} \cdot \text{s}^{-1}$  in the fourth endcap disk region. A mismatch in between simulation and data can be observed. [\[To be understood.\]](#)

In the past, extensive long-term tests were carried out at several gamma and neutron facilities certifying the detector performance. Both full size and small prototype RPCs have been irradiated with photons up to an integrated charge of  $\sim 0.05 \text{ C}/\text{cm}^2$  and  $\sim 0.4 \text{ C}/\text{cm}^2$ , respectively [68, 69]. During Run-I, the RPC system provided stable operation and excellent performance and did not show any aging effects for integrated charge of the order of  $0.01 \text{ C}/\text{cm}^2$ . Projections on currents from 2016 Data, has allowed to determine that the total integrated charge, by the end of HL-LHC, would be of the order of  $1 \text{ C}/\text{cm}^2$  (including a safety factor 3). [\[Corresponding figure needed.\]](#)

2256

## 2257 5.2.1 The Gamma Irradiation Facilities

### 2258 5.2.1.1 GIF

2259 Located in the SPS West Area at the downstream end of the X5 test beam, the Gamma Irradiation  
 2260 Facility (GIF) was a test area in which particle detectors were exposed to a particle beam in presence  
 2261 of an adjustable gamma background [70]. Its goal was to reproduce background conditions these  
 2262 detectors would suffer in their operating environment at LHC. GIF layout is shown in Figure 5.5.  
 2263 Gamma photons are produced by a strong  $^{137}\text{Cs}$  source installed in the upstream part of the zone  
 2264 inside a lead container. The source container includes a collimator, designed to irradiate a  $6 \times 6 \text{ m}^2$   
 2265 area at 5 m maximum to the source. A thin lens-shaped lead filter helps providing with a uniform  
 2266 outcoming flux in a vertical plane, orthogonal to the beam direction. The principal collimator hole  
 2267 provides a pyramidal aperture of  $74^\circ \times 74^\circ$  solid angle and provides a photon flux in a pyramidal vol-

2268   ume along the beam axis. The photon rate is controled by further lead filters allowing the maximum  
 2269   rate to be limited and to vary within a range of four orders of magnitude. Particle detectors under test  
 2270   are then placed within the pyramidal volume in front of the source, perpendicularly to the beam line  
 2271   in order to profit from the homogeneous photon flux. Adjusting the background flux of photons can  
 2272   then be done by using the filters and choosing the position of the detectors with respect to the source.  
 2273

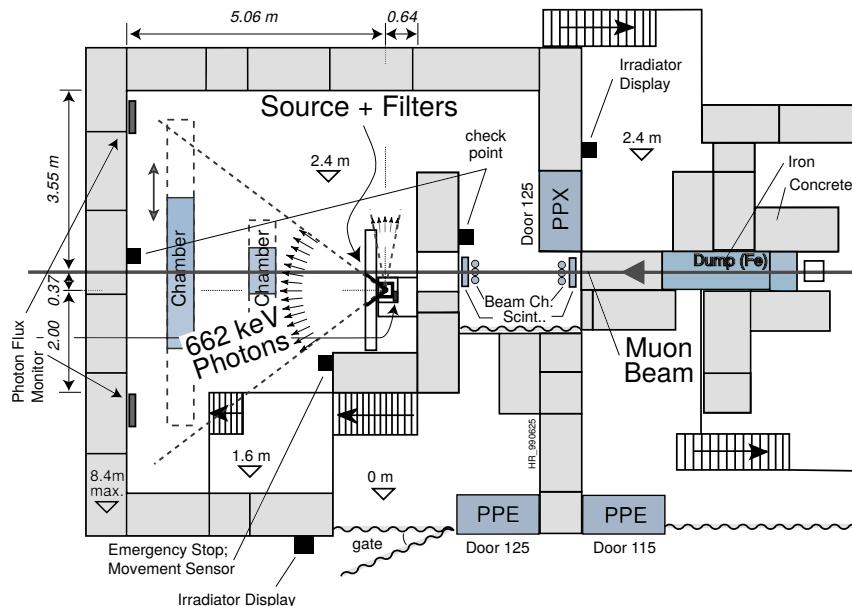


Figure 5.5: Layout of the test beam zone called X5c GIF at CERN. Photons from the radioactive source produce a sustained high rate of random hits over the whole area. The zone is surrounded by 8 m high and 80 cm thick concrete walls. Access is possible through three entry points. Two access doors for personnel and one large gate for material. A crane allows installation of heavy equipment in the area.

2274   As described on Figure 5.6, the  $^{137}\text{Cs}$  source emits a 662 keV photon in 85% of the decays. An  
 2275   activity of 740 GBq was measured on the 5<sup>th</sup> March 1997. To estimate the strength of the flux in  
 2276   2014, it is necessary to consider the nuclear decay through time assiciated to the Cesium source  
 2277   whose half-life is well known ( $t_{1/2} = (30.05 \pm 0.08)$  y). The GIF tests where done in between the  
 2278   20<sup>th</sup> and the 31<sup>st</sup> of August 2014, i.e. at a time  $t = (17.47 \pm 0.02)$  y resulting in an attenuation of  
 2279   the activity from 740 GBq in 1997 to 494 GBq in 2014.  
 2280

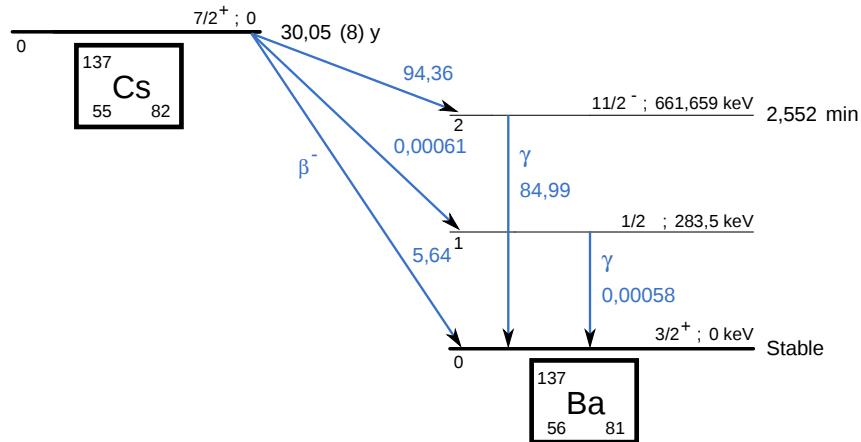


Figure 5.6:  $^{137}\text{Cs}$  decays by  $\beta^-$  emission to the ground state of  $^{137}\text{Ba}$  (BR = 5.64%) and via the 662 keV isomeric level of  $^{137}\text{Ba}$  (BR = 94.36%) whose half-life is 2.55 min.

### 5.2.1.2 GIF++

The new Gamma Irradiation Facility (GIF++), located in the SPS North Area at the downstream end of the H4 test beam, has replaced its predecessor during LS1 and has been operational since spring 2015 [71]. Like GIF, GIF++ features a  $^{137}\text{Cs}$  source of 662 keV gamma photons, their fluence being controlled with a set of filters of various attenuation factors. The source provides two separated large irradiation areas for testing several full-size muon detectors with continuous homogeneous irradiation, as presented in Figure 5.7.

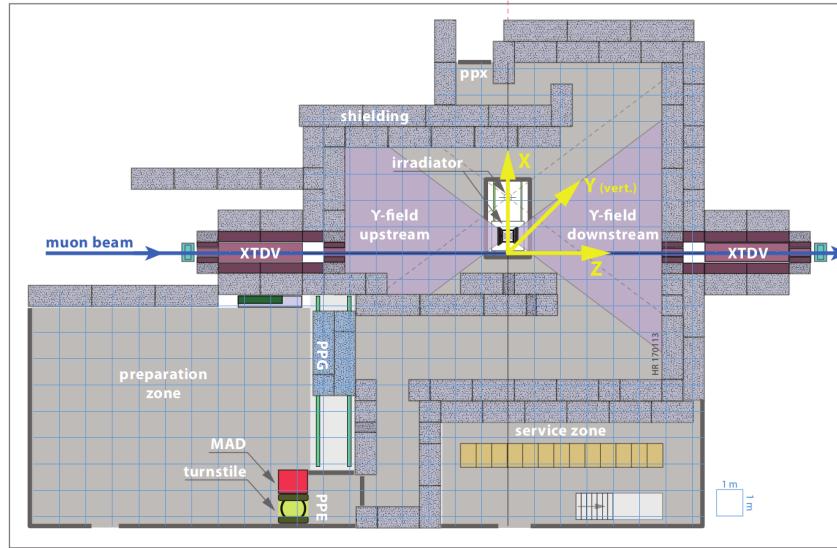


Figure 5.7: Floor plan of the GIF++ facility. When the facility downstream of the GIF++ takes electron beam, a beam pipe is installed along the beam line (z-axis). The irradiator can be displaced laterally (its center moves from  $x = 0.65 \text{ m}$  to  $2.15 \text{ m}$ ), to increase the distance to the beam pipe.

2289 The source activity was measured to be about 13.5 TBq in March 2016. The photon flux being  
 2290 far greater than HL-LHC expectations, GIF++ provides an excellent facility for accelerated aging  
 2291 tests of muon detectors.

2292

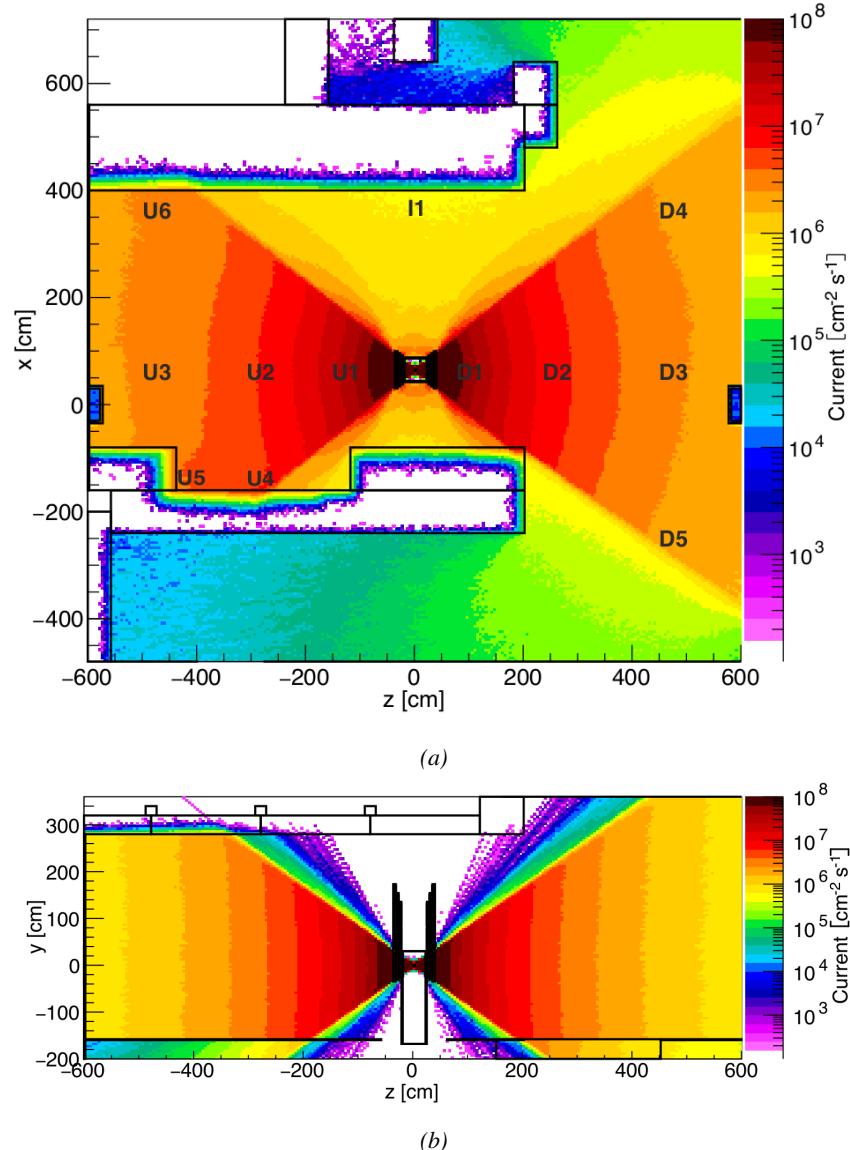


Figure 5.8: Simulated unattenuated current of photons in the xz plane (Figure 5.8a) and yz plane (Figure 5.8b) through the source at  $x = 0.65$  m and  $y = 0$  m. With angular correction filters, the current of 662 keV photons is made uniform in xy planes.

2293 The source is situated in the muon beam line with the muon beam being available a few times a  
 2294 year. The H4 beam, composed of muons with a momentum of about 150 GeV/c, passes through the  
 2295 GIF++ zone and is used to study the performance of the detectors. Its flux is of 104 particles/ $\text{cm}^2$

2296 focused in an area similar to  $10 \times 10 \text{ cm}^2$ . Therefore, with properly adjusted filters, one can imitate  
 2297 the HL-LHC background and study the performance of muon detectors with their trigger/readout  
 2298 electronics in HL-LHC environment.

2299

## 2300 5.3 Preliminary tests at GIF

### 2301 5.3.1 Resistive Plate Chamber test setup

2302 During summer 2014, preliminary tests have been conducted in the GIF area on a newly produced  
 2303 RE4/2 chamber labelled RE-4-2-BARC-161. This chamber has been placed into a trolley covered  
 2304 with a tent. The position of the RPC inside the tent and of the tent related to the source is described  
 2305 in Figure 5.9. To test this CMS RPC, three different absorber settings were used. First of all,  
 2306 measurements were done with fully opened source. Then, to complete this preliminary study, the  
 2307 gamma flux has been attenuated from a factor 2 and a factor 5. The expected gamma flux at the level  
 2308 of our detector will be discussed in subsection ??.

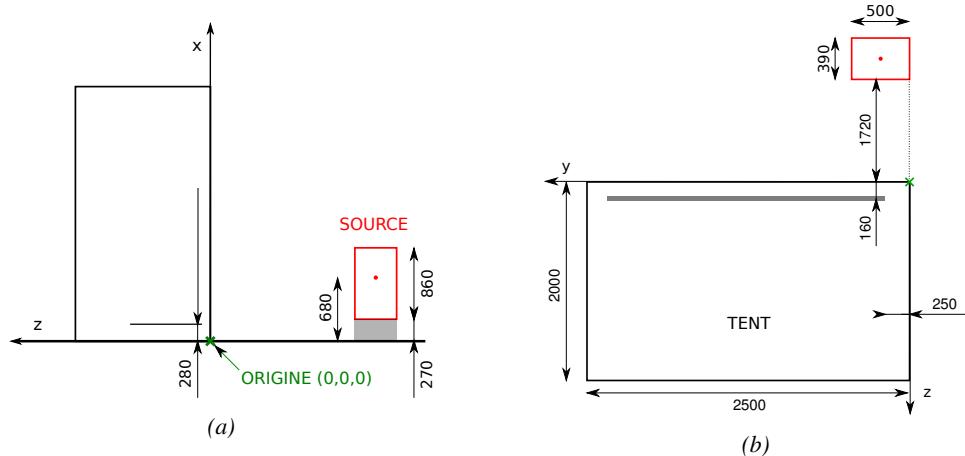
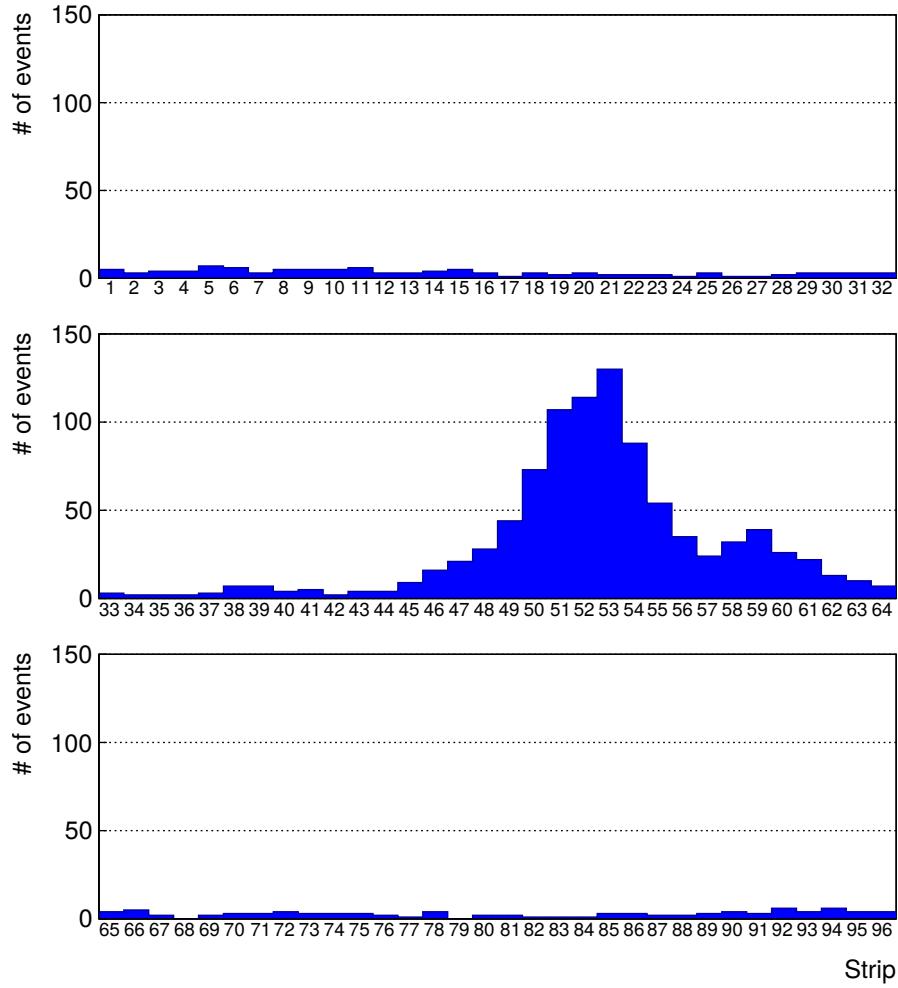


Figure 5.9: Description of the RPC setup. Dimensions are given in mm. A tent containing RPCs is placed at 1720 mm from the source container. The source is situated in the center of the container. RE-4-2-BARC-161 chamber is 160 mm inside the tent. This way, the distance between the source and the chambers plan is 2060 mm. Figure 5.9a provides a side view of the setup in the xz plane while Figure 5.9b shows a top view in the yz plane.



*Figure 5.10: RE-4-2-BARC-161 chamber is inside the tent as described in Figure 5.9. In the top right, the two scintillators used as trigger can be seen. This trigger system has an inclination of 10° relative to horizontal and is placed above half-partition B2 of the RPCs. PMT electronics are shielded thanks to lead blocks placed in order to protect them without stopping photons from going through the scintillators and the chamber.*

2309 At the time of the tests, the beam not being operationnal anymore, a trigger composed of 2 plastic  
 2310 scintillators has been placed in front of the setup with an inclination of 10 deg with respect to the  
 2311 detector plane in order to look at cosmic muons. Using this particular trigger layout, shown on Fig-  
 2312 ure 5.10, leads to a cosmic muon hit distribution into the chamber similar to the one in Figure 5.11.  
 2313 Measured without gamma irradiation, two peaks can be seen on the profil of partition B, centered  
 2314 on strips 52 and 59. Section ?? will help us understand that these two peaks are due respectively to  
 2315 forward and backward coming cosmic particles where forward coming particles are first detected by  
 2316 the scintillators and then the RPC while the backward coming muons are first detected in the RPC.



*Figure 5.11: Hit distributions over all 3 partitions of RE-4-2-BARC-161 chamber is showed on these plots. Top, middle and bottom figures respectively correspond to partitions A, B, and C. These plots show that some events still occur in other half-partitions than B2, which corresponds to strips 49 to 64, in front of which the trigger is placed, contributing to the inefficiency of detection of cosmic muons. In the case of partitions A and C, the very low amount of data can be interpreted as noise. On the other hand, it is clear that a little portion of muons reach the half-partition B1, corresponding to strips 33 to 48.*

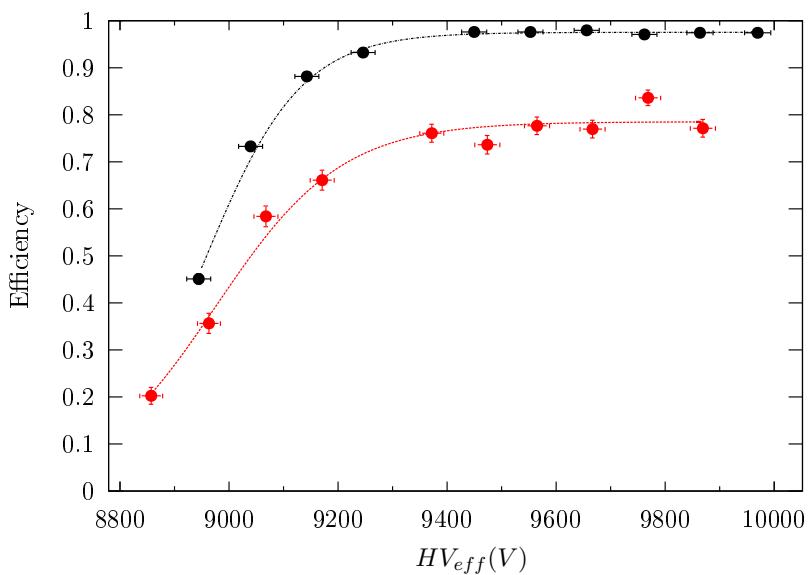
### 5.3.2 Data Acquisition

### 5.3.3 Geometrical acceptance of the setup layout to cosmic muons

In order to profit from a constant gamma irradiation, the detectors inside of the GIF bunker need to be placed in a plane orthogonal to the beam line. The muon beam that used to be available was meant to test the performance of detectors under test. This beam not being active anymore, another solution to test detector performance had to be used. Thus, it has been decided to use cosmic muons detected through a telescope composed of two scintillators. Lead blocks were used as shielding to

2324 protect the photomultipliers from gammas as can be seen from Figure 5.10.

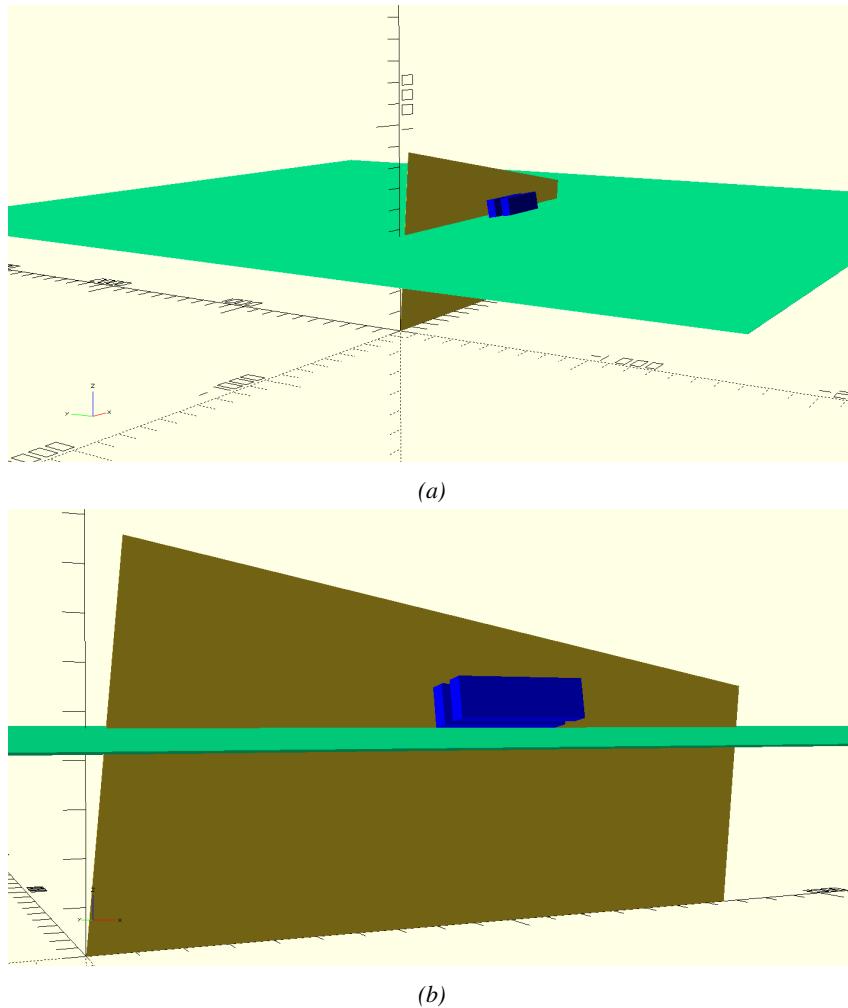
2325 An inclination has been given to the cosmic telescope to maximize the muon flux. A good com-  
 2326 promise had to be found between good enough muon flux and narrow enough hit distribution to  
 2327 be sure to contain all the events into only one half partitions as required from the limited available  
 2328 readout hardware. Nevertheless, a consequence of the misplaced trigger, that can be seen as a loss  
 2329 of events in half-partition B1 in Figure 5.11, is an inefficiency. Nevertheless, the inefficiency of ap-  
 2330 proximately 20 % highlighted in Figure 5.12 by comparing the performance of chamber BARC-161  
 2331 in 904 and at GIF without irradiation seems too important to be explained only by the geometri-  
 2332 cal acceptance of the setup itself. Simulations have been conducted to show how the setup brings  
 2333 inefficiency.



2324 *Figure 5.12: Results are derived from data taken on half-partition B2 only. On the 18<sup>th</sup> of June 2014, data  
 2325 has been taken on chamber RE-2-BARC-161 at building 904 (Prevessin Site) with cosmic muons providing us a  
 2326 reference efficiency plateau of  $(97.54 \pm 0.15)\%$  represented by a black curve. A similar measurement has been  
 2327 done at GIF on the 21<sup>st</sup> of July with the same chamber giving a plateau of  $(78.52 \pm 0.94)\%$  represented by a  
 2328 red curve.*

### 2334 5.3.3.1 Description of the simulation layout

2335 The layout of GIF setup has been reproduced and incorporated into a Monte Carlo (MC) simulation  
 2336 to study the influence of the disposition of the telescope on the final distribution measured by the  
 2337 RPC. A 3D view of the simulated layout is given into Figure 5.13. Muons are generated randomly  
 2338 in a horizontal plane located at a height corresponding to the lowest point of the PMTs. This way,  
 2339 the needed size of the plane in order to simulate events happening at very big azimuthal angles (i.e.  
 2340  $\theta \approx \pi$ ) can be kept relatively small. The muon flux is designed to follow the usual  $\cos^2\theta$  distribution  
 2341 for cosmic particle. The goal of the simulation is to look at muons that pass through the muon  
 2342 telescope composed of the two scintillators and define their distribution onto the RPC plane. During  
 2343 the reconstruction, the RPC plane is then divided into its strips and each muon track is assigned to a  
 2344 strip.



*Figure 5.13: Representation of the layout used for the simulations of the test setup. The RPC is represented as a yellow trapezoid while the two scintillators as blue cuboids looking at the sky. A green plane corresponds to the muon generation plane within the simulation. Figure 5.9a shows a global view of the simulated setup. Figure 5.9b shows a zoomed view that allows to see the 2 scintillators as well as the full RPC plane.*

2345 In order to further refine the quality of the simulation and understand deeper the results the  
 2346 dependance of the distribution has been studied for a range of telescope inclinations. Moreover,  
 2347 the threshold applied on the PMT signals has been included into the simulation in the form of a  
 2348 cut. In the approximation of uniform scintillators, it has been considered that the threshold can be  
 2349 understood as the minimum distance particles need to travel through the scintillating material to give  
 2350 a strong enough signal. Particles that travel a distance smaller than the set "threshold" are thus not  
 2351 detected by the telescope and cannot trigger the data taking. Finally, the FEE threshold also has  
 2352 been considered in a similar way. The mean momentum of horizontal cosmic rays is higher than  
 2353 those of vertical ones but the stopping power of matter for momenta ranging from 1 GeV to 1 TeV  
 2354 stays comparable. It is then possible to assume that the mean number of primary  $e^-$ /ion pairs per  
 2355 unit length will stay similar and thus, depending on the applied discriminator threshold, muons with

2356 the shortest path through the gas volume will deposit less charge and induce a smaller signal on the  
 2357 pick-up strips that could eventually not be detected. These two thresholds also restrain the overall  
 2358 geometrical acceptance of the system.

### 2359 5.3.3.2 Simulation procedure

2360 The simulation software has been designed using C++ and the output data is saved into ROOT  
 2361 histograms. Simulations start for a threshold  $T_{scint}$  varying in a range from 0 to 45 mm in steps  
 2362 of 5 mm, where  $T_{scint} = 0$  mm corresponds to the case where there isn't any threshold apply on  
 2363 the input signal while  $T_{scint} = 45$  mm, which is the scintillator thickness, is the case where muons  
 2364 cannot arrive orthogonally onto the scintillator surface. For a given  $T_{scint}$ , a set of RPC thresholds  
 2365 are considered. The RPC threshold,  $T_{RPC}$  varies from 2 mm, the thickness of the gas volume, to  
 2366 3 mm in steps of 0.25 mm. For each  $(T_{scint}; T_{RPC})$  pair,  $N_\mu = 10^8$  muons are randomly generated  
 2367 inside the muon plane described in the previous paragraph with an azimuthal angle  $\theta$  chosen to follow  
 2368 a  $\cos^2\theta$  distribution.

2369 Planes are associated to each surface of the scintillators. Knowing muon position into the muon  
 2370 plane and its direction allows us, by assuming that muons travel in a straight line, to compute the  
 2371 intersection of the muon track with these planes. Applying conditions to the limits of the surfaces  
 2372 of the scintillator faces then gives us an answer to whether or not the muon passed through the  
 2373 scintillators. In the case the muon has indeed passed through the telescope, the path through each  
 2374 scintillator is computed and muons whose path was shorter than  $T_{scint}$  are rejected and are thus  
 2375 considered as having not interacted with the setup.

2376 On the contrary, if the muon is labeled as good, its position within the RPC plane is computed  
 2377 and the corresponding strip, determined by geometrical tests in the case the distance through the  
 2378 gas volume was enough not to be rejected because of  $T_{RPC}$ , gets a hit and several histograms  
 2379 are filled in order to keep track of the generation point on the muon plane, the intersection points  
 2380 of the reconstructed muons within the telescope, or on the RPC plane, the path traveled through  
 2381 each individual scintillator or the gas volume, as well as other histograms. Moreover, muons fill  
 2382 different histograms whether they are forward or backward coming muons. They are discriminated  
 2383 according to their direction components. When a muon is generated, an  $(x, y, z)$  position is assigned  
 2384 into the muon plane as well as a  $(\theta; \phi)$  pair that gives us the direction it's coming from. This way,  
 2385 muons satisfying the condition  $0 \leq \phi < \pi$  are designated as backward coming muons while muons  
 2386 satisfying  $\pi \leq \phi < 2\pi$  as forward coming muons.

2387 This simulation is then repeated for different telescope inclinations ranging in between 4 and  $20^\circ$   
 2388 and varying in steps of  $2^\circ$ . Due to this inclination and to the vertical position of the detector under  
 2389 test, the muon distribution reconstructed in the detector plane is asymmetrical. The choice as been  
 2390 made to chose a skew distribution formula to fit the data built as the multiplication of gaussian and  
 2391 sigmoidal curves together. A typical gaussian formula is given as 5.1 and has three free parameters  
 2392 as  $A_g$ , its amplitude,  $\bar{x}$ , its mean value and  $\sigma$ , its root mean square. Sigmoidal curves as given by  
 2393 formula 5.2 are functions converging to 0 and  $A_s$  as  $x$  diverges. The inflection point is given as  $x_i$   
 2394 and  $\lambda$  is proportional to the slope at  $x = x_i$ . In the limit where  $\lambda \rightarrow \infty$ , the sigmoid becomes a  
 2395 step function.

$$g(x) = A_g e^{-\frac{(x-\bar{x})^2}{2\sigma^2}} \quad (5.1)$$

$$s(x) = \frac{A_s}{1 + e^{-\lambda(x-x_i)}} \quad (5.2)$$

Finally, a possible representation of a skew distribution is given by formula 5.3 and is the product of 5.1 and 5.2. Naturally, here  $A_{sk} = A_g \times A_s$  and represents the theoretical maximum in the limit where the skew tends to a gaussian function.

$$sk(x) = g(x) \times s(x) = A_{sk} \frac{e^{\frac{-(x-\bar{x})^2}{2\sigma^2}}}{1 + e^{-\lambda(x-x_i)}} \quad (5.3)$$

### 5.3.3.3 Results

#### Influence of $T_{scint}$ on the muon distribution

#### Influence of $T_{RPC}$ on the muon distribution

#### Influence of the telescope inclination on the muon distribution

#### Comparison to data taken at GIF without irradiation

### 5.3.4 Photon flux at GIF

#### 5.3.4.1 Expectations from simulations

In order to understand and evaluate the  $\gamma$  flux in the GIF area, simulations had been conducted in 1999 and published by S. Agosteo et al [70]. Table 5.1 presented in this article gives us the  $\gamma$  flux for different distances  $D$  to the source. This simulation was done using GEANT and a Monte Carlo N-Particle (MCNP) transport code, and the flux  $F$  is given in number of  $\gamma$  per unit area and unit time along with the estimated error from these packages expressed in %.

Nominal ABS	Photon flux $F$ [ $s^{-1}cm^{-2}$ ]			
	at $D = 50$ cm	at $D = 155$ cm	at $D = 300$ cm	at $D = 400$ cm
1	$0.12 \cdot 10^8 \pm 0.2\%$	$0.14 \cdot 10^7 \pm 0.5\%$	$0.45 \cdot 10^6 \pm 0.5\%$	$0.28 \cdot 10^6 \pm 0.5\%$
2	$0.68 \cdot 10^7 \pm 0.3\%$	$0.80 \cdot 10^6 \pm 0.8\%$	$0.25 \cdot 10^6 \pm 0.8\%$	$0.16 \cdot 10^6 \pm 0.6\%$
5	$0.31 \cdot 10^7 \pm 0.4\%$	$0.36 \cdot 10^6 \pm 1.2\%$	$0.11 \cdot 10^6 \pm 1.2\%$	$0.70 \cdot 10^5 \pm 0.9\%$

Table 5.1: Total photon flux ( $E\gamma \leq 662$  keV) with statistical error predicted considering a  $^{137}Cs$  activity of 740 GBq at different values of the distance  $D$  to the source along the  $x$ -axis of irradiation field [70].

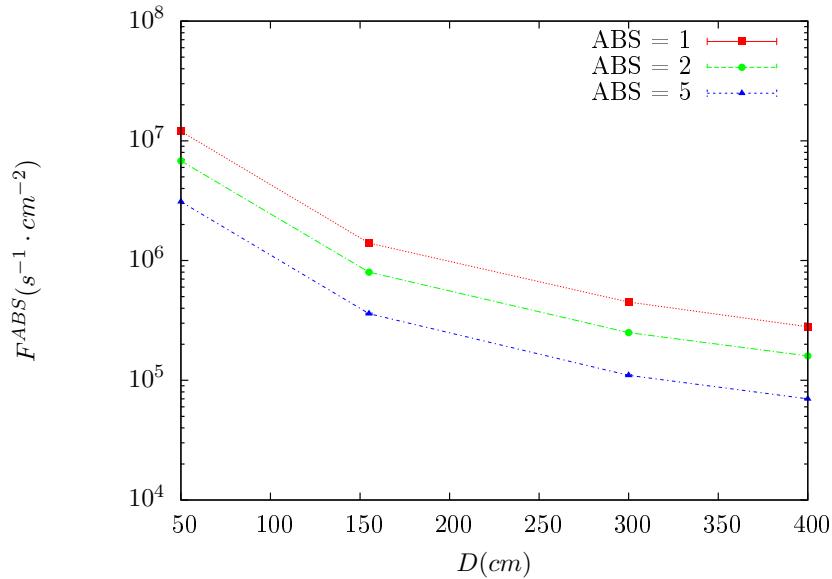


Figure 5.14:  $\gamma$  flux  $F(D)$  is plot using values from table 5.1. As expected, the plot shows similar attenuation behaviours with increasing distance for each absorption factors.

The simulation doesn't directly provide us with an estimated flux at the level of our RPC. First of all, it is needed to extract the value of the flux from the available data contained in the original paper and then to estimate the flux in 2014 at the time the experimentation took place. Figure 5.14 that contains the data from Table 5.1. In the case of a pointlike source emitting isotropic and homogeneous gamma radiations, the gamma flux  $F$  at a distance  $D$  to the source with respect to a reference point situated at  $D_0$  where a known flux  $F_0$  is measured will be expressed like in Equation 5.4, assuming that the flux decreases as  $1/D^2$ , where  $c$  is a fitting factor.

$$F^{ABS} = F_0^{ABS} \times \left( \frac{cD_0}{D} \right)^2 \quad (5.4)$$

By rewriting Equation 5.4, it comes that :

$$c = \frac{D}{D_0} \sqrt{\frac{F^{ABS}}{F_0^{ABS}}} \quad (5.5)$$

$$\Delta c = \frac{c}{2} \left( \frac{\Delta F^{ABS}}{F^{ABS}} + \frac{\Delta F_0^{ABS}}{F_0^{ABS}} \right) \quad (5.6)$$

Finally, using Equation 5.5 and the data in Table 5.1 with  $D_0 = 50$  cm as reference point, we can build Table 5.2. It is interesting to note that  $c$  for each value of  $D$  doesn't depend on the absorption factor.

Nominal ABS	Correction factor $c$		
	at $D = 155$ cm	at $D = 300$ cm	at $D = 400$ cm
1	$1.059 \pm 0.70\%$	$1.162 \pm 0.70\%$	$1.222 \pm 0.70\%$
2	$1.063 \pm 1.10\%$	$1.150 \pm 1.10\%$	$1.227 \pm 0.90\%$
5	$1.056 \pm 1.60\%$	$1.130 \pm 1.60\%$	$1.202 \pm 1.30\%$

Table 5.2: Correction factor  $c$  is computed thanks to formulae 5.5 taking as reference  $D_0 = 50$  cm and the associated flux  $F_0^{ABS}$  for each absorption factor available in table 5.1.

2422 For the range of  $D/D_0$  values available, it is possible to use a simple linear fit to get the evolution  
 2423 of  $c$ . The linear fit will then use only 2 free parameters,  $a$  and  $b$ , as written in Equation 5.7. This gives  
 2424 us the results showed in Figure 5.15. Figure 5.15b confirms that using only a linear fit to extract  $c$  is  
 2425 enough as the evolution of the rate that can be obtained superimposes well on the simulation points.

$$c \left( \frac{D}{D_0} \right) = a \frac{D}{D_0} + b \quad (5.7)$$

$$F^{ABS} = F_0^{ABS} \left( a + \frac{bD_0}{D} \right)^2 \quad (5.8)$$

$$\Delta F^{ABS} = F^{ABS} \left[ \frac{\Delta F_0^{ABS}}{F_0^{ABS}} + 2 \frac{\Delta a + \Delta b \frac{D_0}{D}}{a + \frac{bD_0}{D}} \right] \quad (5.9)$$

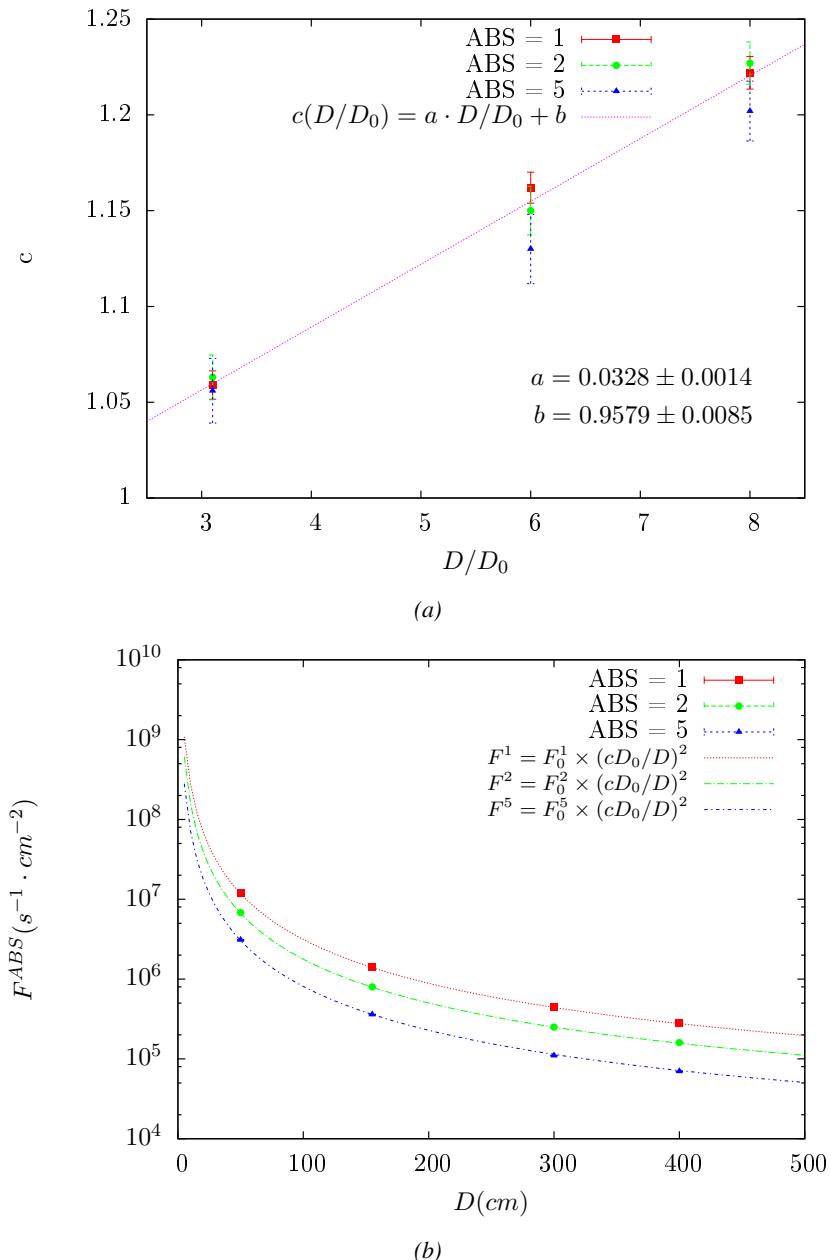


Figure 5.15: Figure 5.15a shows the linear approximation fit done via formulae 5.7 on data from table 5.2. Figure 5.15b shows a comparison of this model with the simulated flux using  $a$  and  $b$  given in figure 5.15a in formulae 5.4 and the reference value  $D_0 = 50\text{cm}$  and the associated flux for each absorption factor  $F_0^{\text{ABS}}$  from table 5.1

In the case of the 2014 GIF tests, the RPC plane is located at a distance  $D = 206$  cm to the source. Moreover, to estimate the strength of the flux in 2014, it is necessary to consider the nuclear decay through time associated to the Cesium source whose half-life is well known ( $t_{1/2} = (30.05 \pm 0.08)$  y). The very first source activity measurement has been done on the 5<sup>th</sup> of March 1997 while the GIF

2430 tests where done in between the 20<sup>th</sup> and the 31<sup>st</sup> of August 2014, i.e. at a time  $t = (17.47 \pm 0.02)$  y  
 2431 resulting in an attenuation of the activity from 740 GBq in 1997 to 494 GBq in 2014. All the needed  
 2432 information to extrapolate the flux through our detector in 2014 has now been assembled, leading  
 2433 to the Table 5.3. It is interesting to note that for a common RPC sensitivity to  $\gamma$  of  $2 \cdot 10^{-3}$ , the  
 2434 order of magnitude of the estimated hit rate per unit area is of the order of the kHz for the fully  
 2435 opened source. Moreover, taking profit of the two working absorbers, it will be possible to scan  
 2436 background rates at 0 Hz,  $\sim 300$  Hz as well as  $\sim 600$  Hz. Without source, a good estimate of the  
 2437 intrinsic performance will be available. Then at 300 Hz, the goal will be to show that the detectors  
 2438 fulfill the performance certification of CMS RPCs. Then a first idea of the performance of the  
 2439 detectors at higher background will be provided with absorption factors 2 ( $\sim 600$  Hz) and 1 (no  
 2440 absorption). *[Here I will also put a reference to the plot showing the estimated background rate at  
 2441 the level of RE3/1 in the case of HL-LHC but this one being in another chapter, I will do it later.]*

Nominal ABS	Photon flux $F$ [ $s^{-1}cm^{-2}$ ]			Hit rate/unit area [ $Hz cm^{-2}$ ] at $D^{2014} = 206$ cm
	at $D_0^{1997} = 50$ cm	at $D^{1997} = 206$ cm	at $D^{2014} = 206$ cm	
1	$0.12 \cdot 10^8 \pm 0.2\%$	$0.84 \cdot 10^6 \pm 0.3\%$	$0.56 \cdot 10^6 \pm 0.3\%$	$1129 \pm 32$
2	$0.68 \cdot 10^7 \pm 0.3\%$	$0.48 \cdot 10^6 \pm 0.3\%$	$0.32 \cdot 10^6 \pm 0.3\%$	$640 \pm 19$
5	$0.31 \cdot 10^7 \pm 0.4\%$	$0.22 \cdot 10^6 \pm 0.3\%$	$0.15 \cdot 10^6 \pm 0.3\%$	$292 \pm 9$

Table 5.3: The data at  $D_0$  in 1997 is taken from [70]. In a second step, using Equations 5.8 and 5.9, the flux at  $D$  can be estimated in 1997. Then, taking into account the attenuation of the source activity, the flux at  $D$  can be estimated at the time of the tests in GIF in 2014. Finally, assuming a sensitivity of the RPC to  $\gamma$   $s = 2 \cdot 10^{-3}$ , an estimation of the hit rate per unit area is obtained.

2442 **5.3.4.2 Dose measurements**

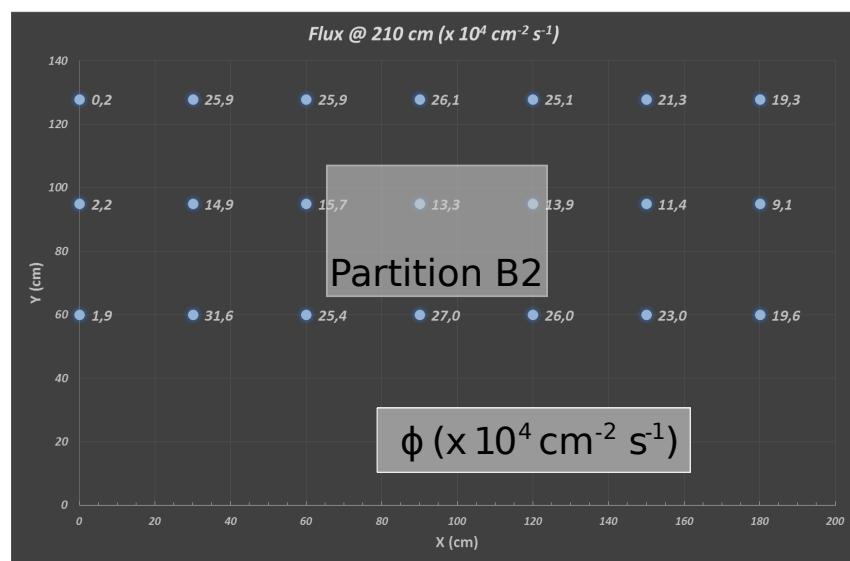


Figure 5.16: Dose measurements has been done in a plane corresponding to the tents front side. This plan is 1900 mm away from the source. As explained in the first chapter, a lens-shaped lead filter provides a uniform photon flux in the vertical plan orthogonal to the beam direction. If the second line of measured fluxes is not taken into account because of lower values due to experimental equipments in the way between the source and the tent, the uniformity of the flux is well showed by the results.

<sup>2443</sup> **5.3.5 Results and discussions**

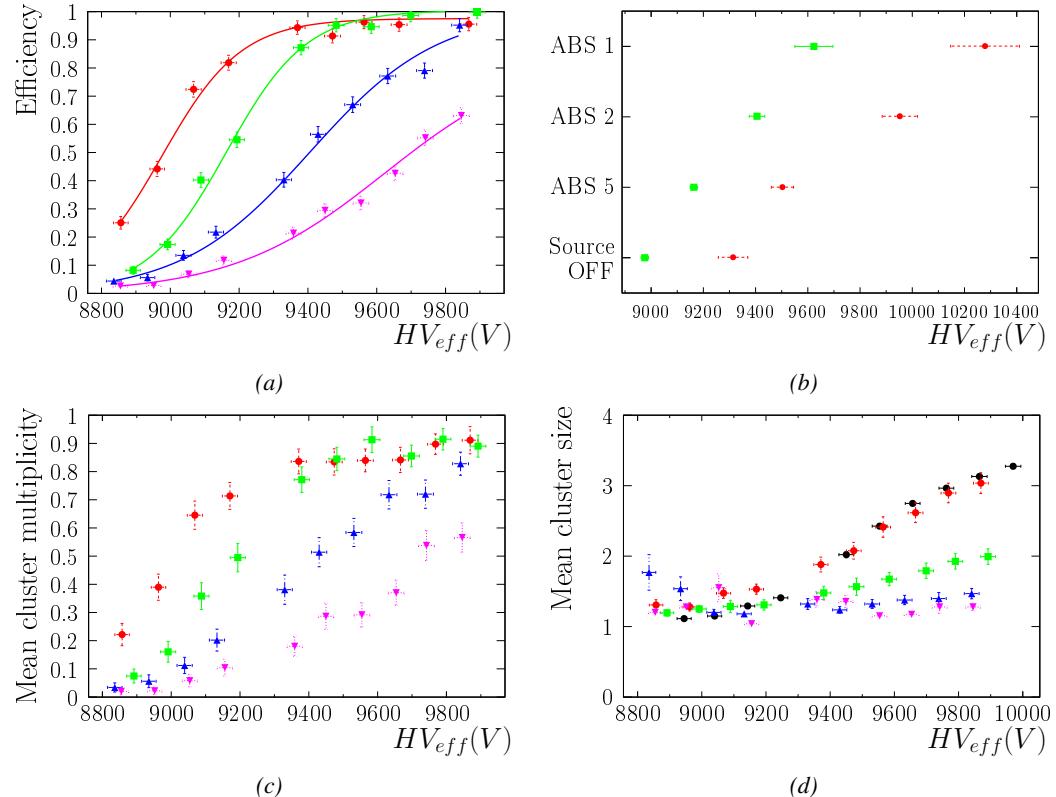


Figure 5.17

## 2444 5.4 Longevity tests at GIF++

2445 Longevity studies imply a monitoring of the performance of the detectors probed using a high inten-  
2446 sity muon beam in a irradiated environment by periodically measuring their rate capability, the dark  
2447 current running through them and the bulk resistivity of the Bakelite composing their electrodes.  
2448 GIF++, with its very intense  $^{137}\text{Cs}$  source, provides the perfect environment to perform such kind  
2449 of tests. Assuming a maximum acceleration factor of 3, it is expected to accumulate the equivalent  
2450 charge in 1.7 years.

2451 As the maximum background is found in the endcap, the choice naturally was made to focus the  
2452 GIF++ longevity studies on endcap chambers. Most of the RPC system was installed in 2007. Nev-  
2453 ertheless, the large chambers in the fourth endcap (RE4/2 and RE4/3) have been installed during  
2454 LS1 in 2014. The Bakelite of these two different productions having different properties, four spare  
2455 chambers of the present system were selected, two RE2,3/2 spares and two RE4/2 spares. Having  
2456 two chambers of each type allows to always keep one of them non irradiated as reference, the per-  
2457 formance evolution of the irradiated chamber being then compared through time to the performance  
2458 of the non irradiated one.

2459 The performance of the detectors under different level of irradiation is measured periodically dur-  
2460 ing dedicated test beam periods using the H4 muon beam. In between these test beam periods, the  
2461 two RE2,3/2 and RE4/2 chambers selected for this study are irradiated by the  $^{137}\text{Cs}$  source in order  
2462 to accumulate charge and the gamma background is monitored, as well as the currents. The two  
2463 remaining chambers are kept non-irradiated as reference detectors. Due to the limited gas flow in  
2464 GIF++, the RE4 chamber remained non-irradiated until end of November 2016 where a new mass  
2465 flow controller has been installed allowing for bigger volumes of gas to flow in the system.

2466 Figures 5.18 and 5.19 give us for different test beam periods, and thus for increasing integrated  
2467 charge through time, a comparison of the maximum efficiency, obtained using a sigmoid-like func-  
2468 tion, and of the working point of both irradiated and non irradiated chambers [55]. No aging is yet  
2469 to see from this data, the shifts in  $\gamma$  rate per unit area in between irradiated and non irradiated detec-  
2470 tors and RE2 and RE4 types being easily explained by a difference of sensitivity due to the various  
2471 Bakelite resistivities of the HPL electrodes used for the electrode production.

2472 Collecting performance data at each test beam period allows us to extrapolate the maximum effi-  
2473 ciency for a background hit rate of  $300\text{ Hz}/\text{cm}^2$  corresponding to the expected HL-LHC conditions.  
2474 Aging effects could emerge from a loss of efficiency with increasing integrated charge over time,  
2475 thus Figure 5.20 helps us understand such degradation of the performance of irradiated detectors in  
2476 comparison with non irradiated ones. The final answer for an eventual loss of efficiency is given in  
2477 Figure 5.21 by comparing for both irradiated and non irradiated detectors the efficiency sigmoids  
2478 before and after the longevity study. Moreover, to complete the performance information, the Bake-  
2479 lite resistivity is regularly measured thanks to  $Ag$  scans (Figure 5.22) and the noise rate is monitored  
2480 weekly during irradiation periods (Figure 5.23). At the end of 2016, no signs of aging were observed  
2481 and further investigation is needed to get closer to the final integrated charge requirements proposed  
2482 for the longevity study of the present CMS RPC sub-system.

2483

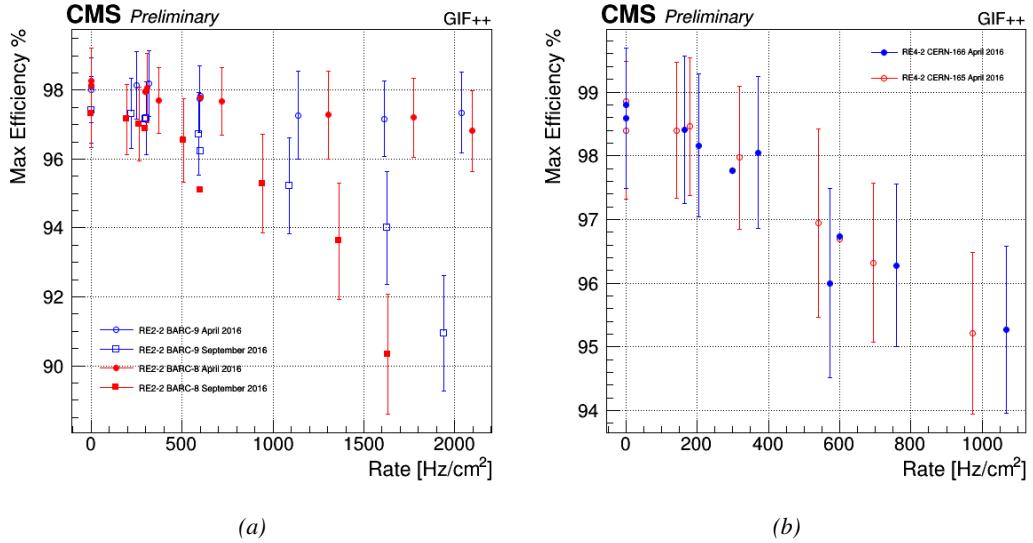


Figure 5.18: Evolution of the maximum efficiency for RE2 (5.18a) and RE4 (5.18b) chambers with increasing extrapolated  $\gamma$  rate per unit area at working point. Both irradiated (blue) and non irradiated (red) chambers are shown.

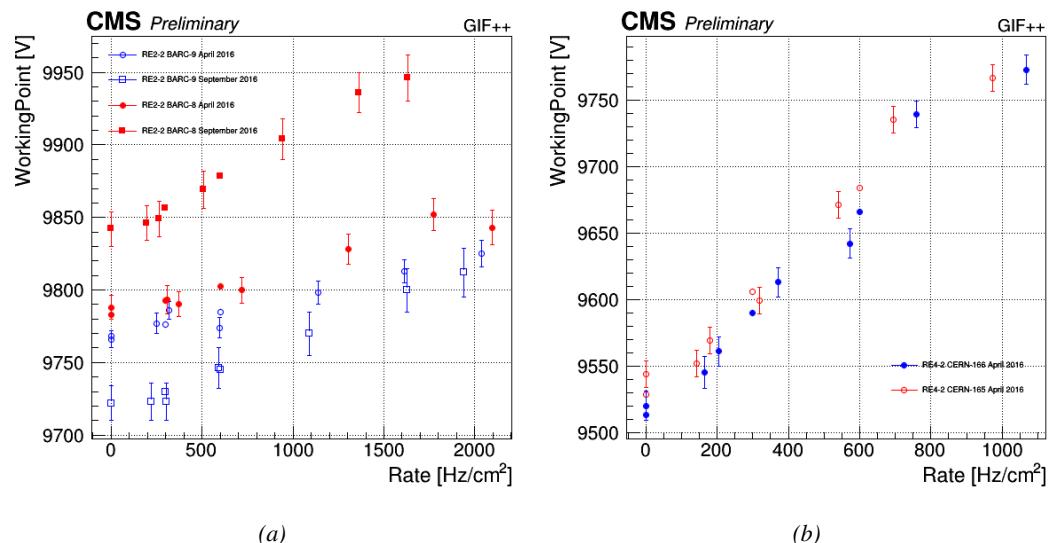


Figure 5.19: Evolution of the working point for RE2 (5.19a) and RE4 (5.19b) with increasing extrapolated  $\gamma$  rate per unit area at working point. Both irradiated (blue) and non irradiated (red) chambers are shown.

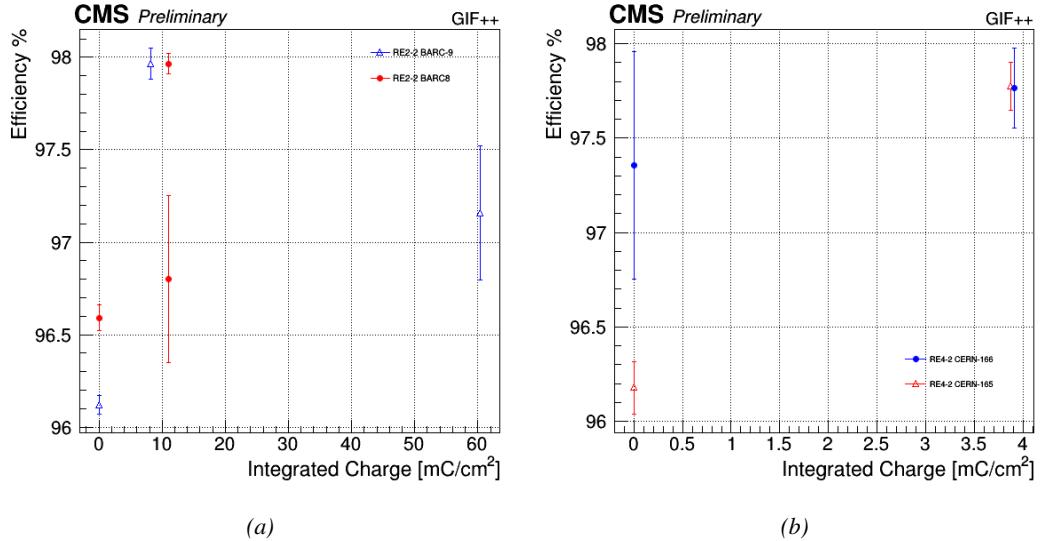


Figure 5.20: Evolution of the maximum efficiency at HL-LHC conditions, i.e. a background hit rate per unit area of 300 Hz/cm<sup>2</sup>, with increasing integrated charge for RE2 (5.20a) and RE4 (5.20b) detectors. Both irradiated (blue) and non irradiated (red) chambers are shown. The integrated charge for non irradiated detectors is recorded during test beam periods and stays small with respect to the charge accumulated in irradiated chambers.

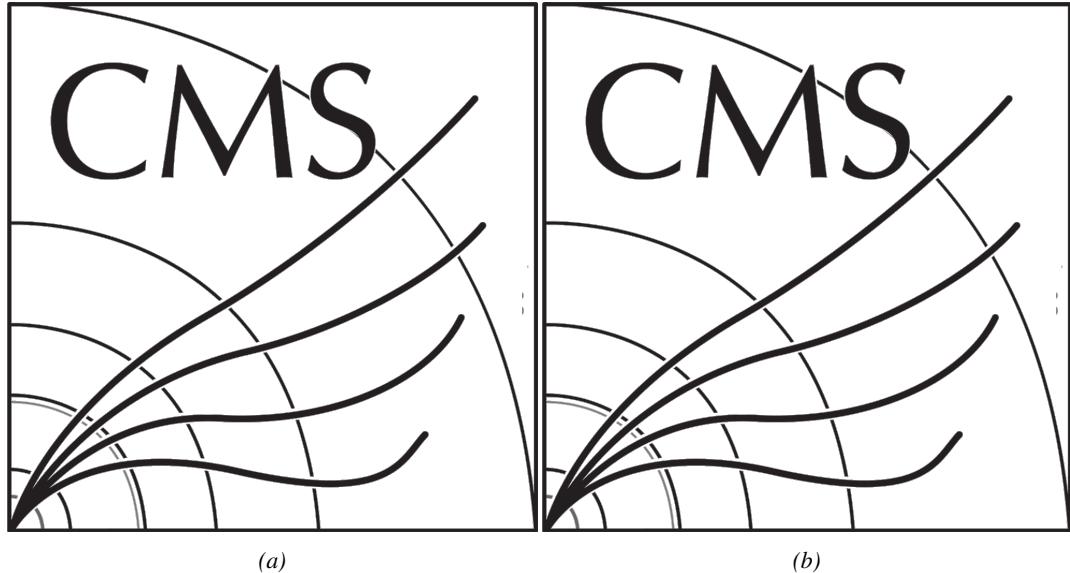


Figure 5.21: Comparison of the efficiency sigmoid before (triangles) and after (circles) irradiation for RE2 (5.21a) and RE4 (5.21b) detectors. Both irradiated (blue) and non irradiated (red) chambers are shown.

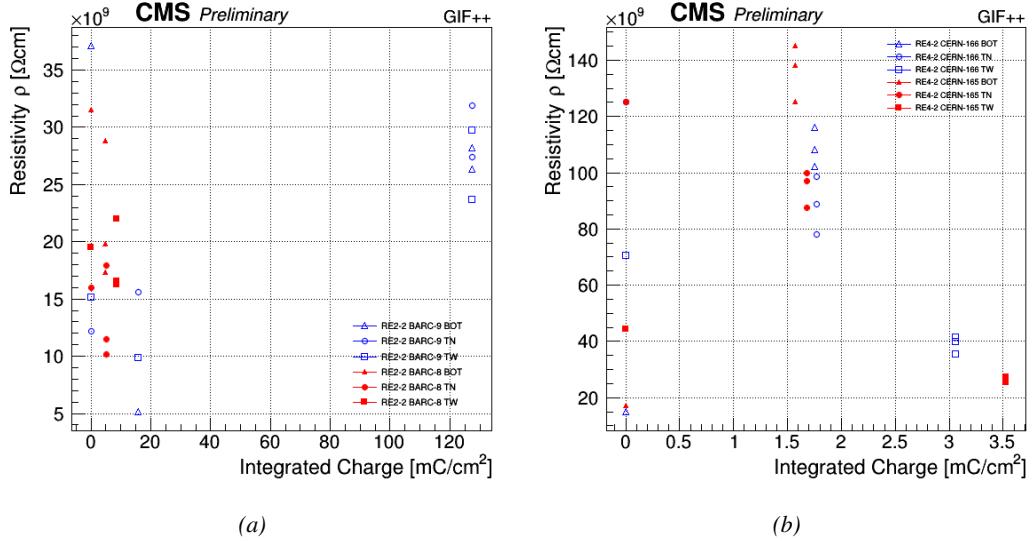


Figure 5.22: Evolution of the Bakelite resistivity for RE2 (5.22a) and RE4 (5.22b) detectors. Both irradiated (blue) and non-irradiated (red) chambers are shown.

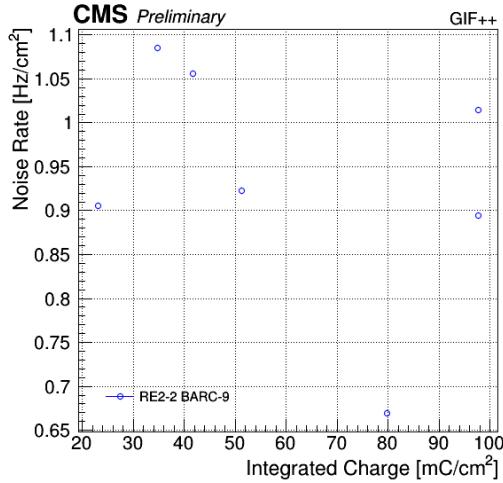


Figure 5.23: Evolution of the noise rate per unit area for the irradiated chamber RE2-2-BARC-9 only.

#### 5.4.1 Description of the Data Acquisition

For the longevity studies, four spare chambers of the present system are used. Two spare RPCs of the RE2,3 stations as well as two spare RPCs from the new RE4 stations have been mounted in a Trolley. Six RE4 gaps are also placed in the trolley. The trolley is placed inside the Gif++ in the upstream region of the bunker, taking the cesium source as a reference. The trolley is oriented for the detection surface of the chambers to be orthogonal to the beam line. The system can be moved along the orthogonal plane in order to have the beam in all  $\eta$ -partitions. For the aging the trolley is

2491 moved outside the beam line and is placed in a distance of 5.2 m to the source, which irradiates the  
 2492 bunker using an attenuation filter of 2.2 which corresponds to a fluence of  $10^7 \text{ gamma/cm}^2$ .

2493 During GIF++ operation, the data collected can be divided into different categories as several  
 2494 parameters are monitored in addition to the usual RPC performance data. On one hand, to know  
 2495 the performance of a chamber, it is need to measure its efficiency and to know the background  
 2496 conditions in which it is operated. To do this, the hit signals from the chamber are recorded and  
 2497 stored in a ROOT file via a Data Acquisition (DAQ) software. On the other hand, it is also very  
 2498 important to monitor parameters such as environmental pressure and temperature, gas temperature  
 2499 and humidity, RPC HV, LV, and currents, or even source and beam status. This is done through the  
 2500 GIF++ web Detector Control Software (DCS) that stores this information in a database.

2501 Two different types of tests are conducted on RPCs via the DAQ. Indeed, the performance of the  
 2502 detectors is measured periodically during dedicated test beam periods using the H4 muon beam. In  
 2503 between these test beam periods, when the beam is not available, the chambers are irradiated by the  
 2504  $^{137}\text{Cs}$  in order to accumulate deposited charge and the gamma background is measured.

2505 RPCs under test are connected through LVDS cables to V1190A Time-to-Digital Converter  
 2506 (TDC) modules manufactured by CAEN. These modules, located in the rack area outside of the  
 2507 bunker, get the logic signals sent by the chambers and save them into their buffers. Due to the  
 2508 limited size of the buffers, the collected data is regularly erased and replaced. A trigger signal is  
 2509 needed for the TDC modules to send the useful data to the DAQ computer via a V1718 CAEN USB  
 2510 communication module.

2511 In the case of performance test, the trigger signal used for data acquisition is generated by the  
 2512 coincidence of three scintillators. A first one is placed upstream outside of the bunker, a second one  
 2513 is placed downstream outside of the bunker, while a third one is placed in front of the trolley, close by  
 2514 the chambers. Every time a trigger is sent to the TDCs, i.e. every time a muon is detected, knowing  
 2515 the time delay in between the trigger and the RPC signals, signals located in the right time window  
 2516 are extracted from the buffers and saved for later analysis. Signals are taken in a time window of  
 2517 400 ns centered on the muon peak (here we could show a time spectrum). On the other hand, in the  
 2518 case of background rate measurement, the trigger signal needs to be "random" not to measure muons  
 2519 but to look at gamma background. A trigger pulse is continuously generated at a rate of 300 Hz using  
 2520 a dual timer. To integrate an as great as possible time, all signals contained within a time window of  
 2521 10us prior to the random trigger signal are extracted form the buffers and saved for further analysis  
 2522 (here another time spectrum to illustrate could be useful, maybe even place both spectrum together  
 2523 as a single Figure).

2524 The signals sent to the TDCs correspond to hit collections in the RPCs. When a particle hits  
 2525 a RPC, it induce a signal in the pickup strips of the RPC readout. If this signal is higher than the  
 2526 detection threshold, a LVDS signal is sent to the TDCs. The data is then organised into 4 branches  
 2527 keeping track of the event number, the hit multiplicity for the whole setup, and the time and channel  
 2528 profile of the hits in the TDCs.

#### 2529 **5.4.2 RPC current, environmental and operation parameter monitoring**

2530 In order to take into account the variation of pressure and temperature between different data taking  
 2531 periods the applied voltage is corrected following the relationship :

$$2532 \quad HV_{eff} = HV_{app} \times \left( 0.2 + 0.8 \cdot \frac{P_0}{P} \times \frac{T}{T_0} \right) \quad (5.10)$$

2532 where  $T_0$  (=293 K) and  $P_0$  (=990 mbar) are the reference values.

2533 **5.4.3 Measurement procedure**

2534 Insert a short description of the online tools (DAQ, DCS, DQM).

2535 Insert a short description of the offline tools : tracking and efficiency algorithm.

2536 Identify long term aging effects we are monitoring the rates per strip.

2537 **5.4.4 Longevity studies results**

# 6

2538

2539

## Investigation on high rate RPCs

2540 **6.1 Rate limitations and ageing of RPCs**

2541 **6.1.1 Low resistivity electrodes**

2542 **6.1.2 Low noise front-end electronics**

2543 **6.2 Construction of prototypes**

2544 **6.3 Results and discussions**



# 7

2545

2546

## Conclusions and outlooks

2547 **7.1 Conclusions**

2548 **7.2 Outlooks**



# A

2549

2550

## A data acquisition software for CAEN VME TDCs

2551

2552 Certifying detectors in the perspective of HL-LHC required to develop tools for the GIF++ experiment.  
2553 Among them was the C++ Data Acquisition (DAQ) software that allows to make the communications  
2554 in between a computer and TDC modules in order to retrieve the RPC data [72]. In this  
2555 appendix, details about this software, as of how the software was written, how it functions and how  
2556 it can be exported to another similar setup, will be given.

### 2557 A.1 GIF++ DAQ file tree

2558 GIF++ DAQ source code is fully available on github at [https://github.com/afagot/GIF\\_DAQ](https://github.com/afagot/GIF_DAQ). The software requires 3 non-optional dependencies:

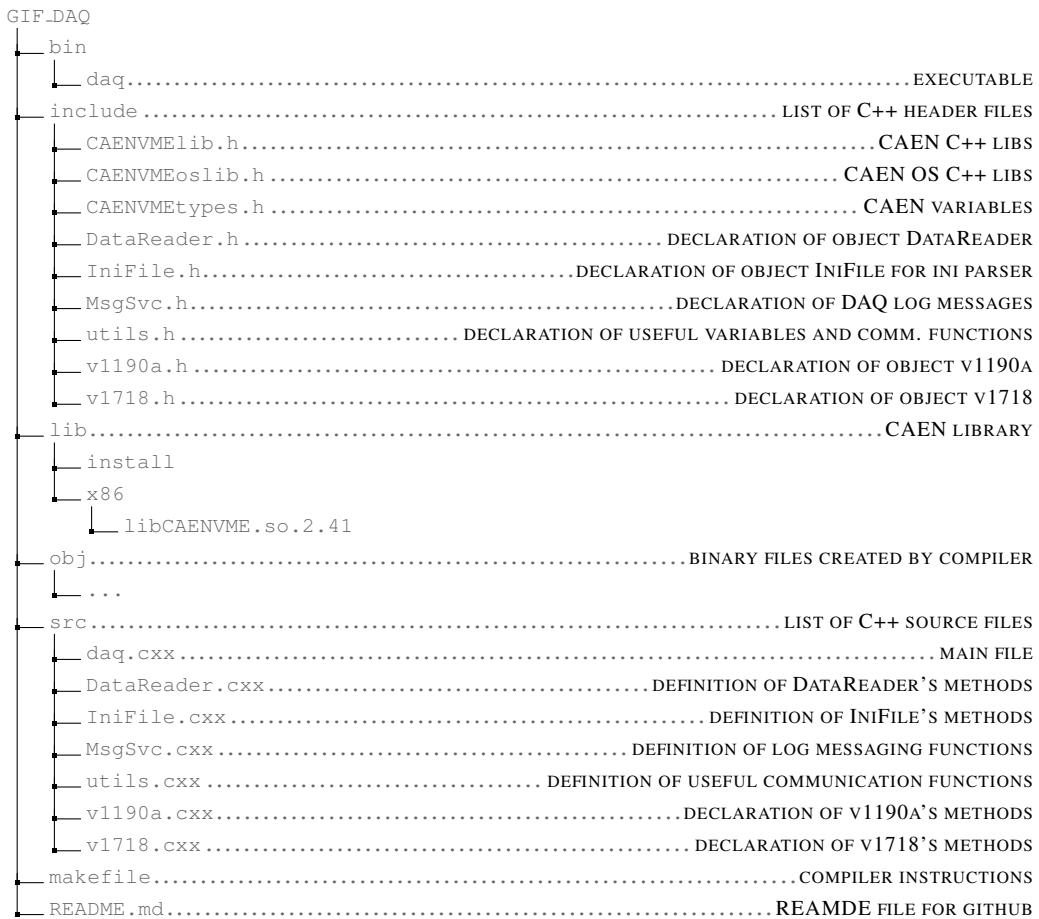
- 2560 • CAEN USB Driver, to mount the VME hardware,  
2561 • CAEN VME Library, to communicate with the VME hardware, and  
2562 • ROOT, to organize the collected data into a TTree.

2563 The CAEN VME library will not be packaged by distributions and will need to be installed man-  
2564 ually. To compile the GIF++ DAQ project via a terminal, from the DAQ folder use the command:

2565  
2566      make

2567 The source code tree is provided below along with comments to give an overview of the files' con-  
2568 tent. The different objects created for this project (`v1718`, `v1190a`, `IniFile` & `DataReader`) will be  
2569 described in details in the following sections.

2570



## 2571 A.2 Usage of the DAQ

2572 GIF++ DAQ, as used in GIF++, is not a standalone software. Indeed, the system being more complexe,  
 2573 the DAQ only is a sub-layer of the software architecture developped to control and monitor  
 2574 the RPCs that are placed into the bunker for performance study in an irradiated environment. The top  
 2575 layer of GIF++ is a Web Detector Control System (webDCS) application. The DAQ is only called  
 2576 by the webDCS when data needs to be acquired. The webDCS operates the DAQ through command  
 2577 line. To start the DAQ, the webDCS calls:

2578  
 2579   bin/daq /path/to/the/log/file/in/the/output/data/folder

2580 where /path/to/the/log/file/in/the/output/data/folder is the only argument required. This  
 2581 log file is important for the webDCS as this file contains all the content of the communication of the  
 2582 webDCS and the different systems monitored by the webDCS. Its content is constantly displayed  
 2583 during data taking for the users to be able to follow the operations. The communication messages  
 2584 are normally sent to the webDCS log file via the functions declared in file MsgSvc.h, typically  
 2585 MSG\_INFO(string message).

2586

### 2587 A.3 Description of the readout setup

2588 The CMS RPC setup at GIF++ counts 5 V1190A Time-to-Digital Converter (TDC) manufactured  
 2589 by CAEN [73]. V1190A are VME units accepting 128 independent Multi-Hit/Multi-Event TDC  
 2590 channels whose signals are treated by 4 100 ps high performance TDC chips developed by CERN  
 2591 / ECP-MIC Division. The communication between the computer and the TDCs to transfer data is  
 2592 done via a V1718 VME master module also manufactured by CAEN and operated from a USB  
 2593 port [74]. These VME modules are all hosted into a 6U VME 6021 powered crate manufactured by  
 2594 W-Ie-Ne-R than can accommodate up to 21 VME bus cards [75]. These 3 components of the DAQ  
 2595 setup are shown in Figure A.1.

2596

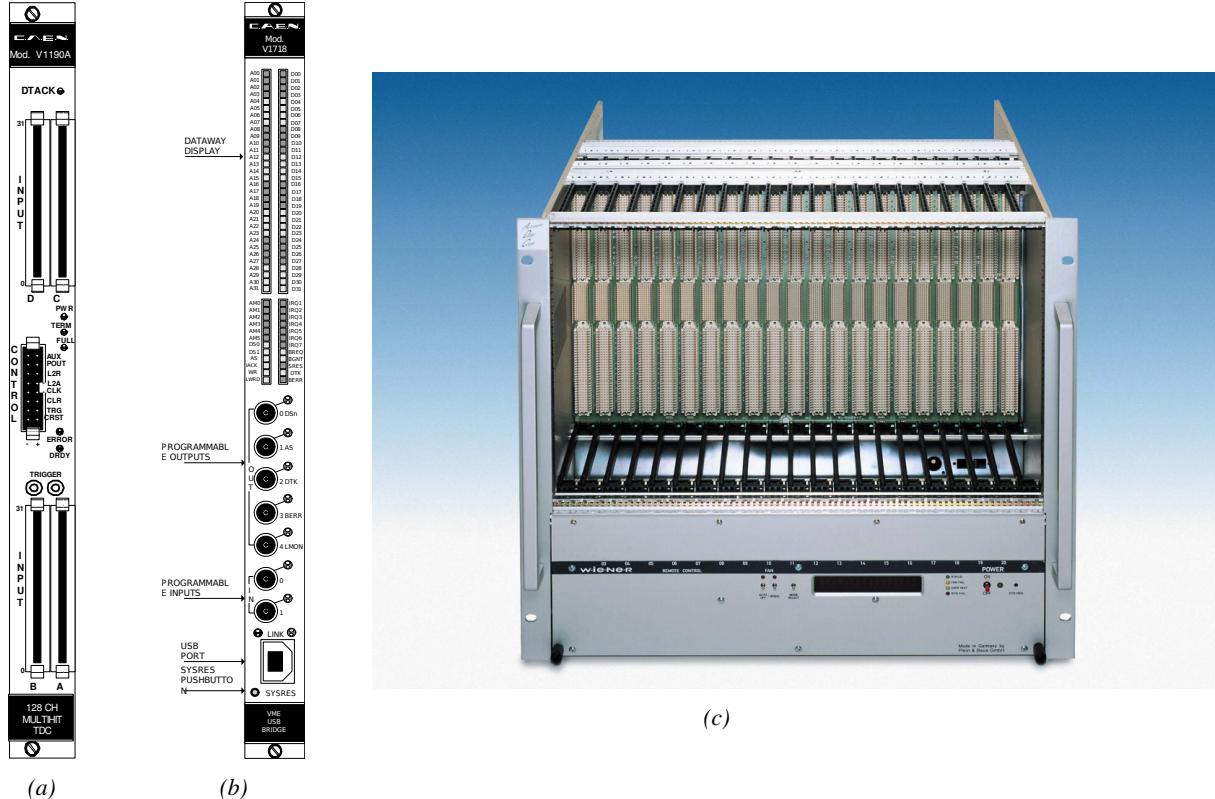


Figure A.1: (A.1a) View of the front panel of a V1190A TDC module [73]. (A.1b) View of the front panel of a VI718 Bridge module [74]. (A.1c) View of the front panel of a 6U 6021 VME crate [75].

2597

### A.4 Data read-out

2598 To efficiently perform a data readout algorithm, C++ objects to handle the VME modules (TDCs  
 2599 and VME bridge) have been created along with objects to store data and read the configuration file

2600 that comes as an input of the DAQ software.

2601

#### 2602 A.4.1 V1190A TDCs

2603 The DAQ used at GIF takes profit of the *Trigger Matching Mode* offered by V1190A modules.  
 2604 This setting is enabled through the method `v1190a::SetTrigMatching (int ntdcs)` where `ntdcs`  
 2605 is the total number of TDCs in the setup this setting needs to be enabled for (Source Code A.1). A  
 2606 trigger matching is performed in between a trigger time tag, a trigger signal sent into the TRIGGER  
 2607 input of the TDC visible on Figure A.1a, and the channel time measurements, signals recorded from  
 2608 the detectors under test in our case. Control over this data acquisition mode, explained through  
 2609 Figure A.2, is offered via 4 programmable parameters:

- 2610 • **match window:** the matching between a trigger and a hit is done within a programmable time  
 2611 window. This is set via the method

2612   `void v1190a::SetTrigWindowWidth(Uint windowHeight, int ntdcs)`

- 2613 • **window offset:** temporal distance between the trigger tag and the start of the trigger matching  
 2614 window. This is set via the method

2615   `void v1190a::SetTrigWindowWidth(Uint windowHeight, int ntdcs)`

- 2616 • **extra search margin:** an extended time window is used to ensure that all matching hits are  
 2617 found. This is set via the method

2618   `void v1190a::SetTrigSearchMargin(Uint searchMargin, int ntdcs)`

- 2619 • **reject margin:** older hits are automatically rejected to prevent buffer overflows and to speed  
 2620 up the search time. This is set via the method

2621   `void v1190a::SetTrigRejectionMargin(Uint rejectMargin, int ntdcs)`

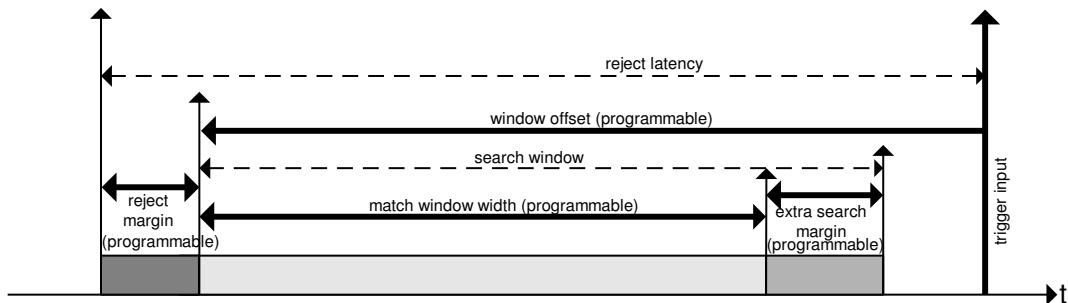


Figure A.2: Module V1190A Trigger Matching Mode timing diagram [73].

2622 Each of these 4 parameters are given in number of clocks, 1 clock being 25 ns long. It is easy to  
 2623 understand at this level that there are 3 possible functioning settings:

- 2624 • **1:** the match window is entirely contained after the trigger signal,

- 2625 • **2:** the match window overlaps the trigger signal, or

- 2626 • **3:** the match window is entirely contained before the trigger signal as displayed on Figure A.2.

2627 In both the first and second cases, the sum of the window width and of the offset can be set to  
2628 a maximum of 40 clocks, which corresponds to 1  $\mu$ s. Evidently, the offset can be negative, allowing  
2629 for a longer match window, with the constraint of having the window ending at most 1  $\mu$ s after the  
2630 trigger signal. In the third case, the maximum negative offset allowed is of 2048 clocks (12 bit) cor-  
2631 responding to 51.2  $\mu$ s, the match window being strictly smaller than the offset. In the case of GIF++,  
2632 the choice has been made to use this last setting by delaying the trigger signal. During the studies  
2633 performed in GIF++, both the efficiency of the RPCs, probed using a muon beam, and the noise or  
2634 gamma background rate are monitored. The extra search and reject margins are left unused.  
2635 To probe the efficiency of RPC detectors, the trigger time tag is provided by the coïncidence of  
2636 scintillators when a bunch of muons passes through GIF++ area is used to trigger the data acquisi-  
2637 tion. For this measurement, it is useful to reduce the match window width only to contain the muon  
2638 information. Indeed, the delay in between a trigger signal and the detection of the corresponding  
2639 muon in the RPC being very contant (typically a few tens of ns due to jitter and cable length), the  
2640 muon signals are very localised in time. Thus, due to a delay of approximalety 325 ns in between  
2641 the muons and the trigger, the settings where chosen to have a window width of 24 clocks (600 ns)  
2642 centered on the muon peak thanks to a negative offset of 29 clocks (725 ns).  
2643 On the otherhand, monitoring the rates don't require for the DAQ to look at a specific time window.  
2644 It is important to integrate enough time to have a robust measurement of the rate as the number of  
2645 hits per time unit. The triggerring signal is provided by a pulse generator at a frequency of 300 Hz  
2646 to ensure that the data taking occurs in a random way, with respect to beam physics, to probe only  
2647 the irradiation spectrum on the detectors. The match window is set to 400 clocks (10  $\mu$ s) and the  
2648 negative offset to 401 clocks as it needs to exceed the value of the match window.

```

2649
class v1190a
{
    private :
        long             Handle;
        vector<Data32>   Address;
        CVDataWidth      DataWidth;
        CVAddressModifier AddressModifier;

    public:

        v1190a(long handle, IniFile *inifile, int ntdcs);
        ~v1190a();
        Data16 write_op_reg(Data32 address, int code, string error);
        Data16 read_op_reg(Data32 address, string error);
        void Reset(int ntdcs);
        void Clear(int ntdcs);
        void TestWR(Data16 value,int ntdcs);
        void CheckTDCStatus(int ntdcs);
        void CheckCommunication(int ntdcs);
        void SetTDCTestMode(Data16 mode,int ntdcs);
        void SetTrigMatching(int ntdcs);
        void SetTrigTimeSubtraction(Data16 mode,int ntdcs);
        void SetTrigWindowWidth(Uint windowHeight,int ntdcs);
        void SetTrigWindowOffset(Uint windowOffset,int ntdcs);
        void SetTrigSearchMargin(Uint searchMargin,int ntdcs);
        void SetTrigRejectionMargin(Uint rejectMargin,int ntdcs);
        void GetTrigConfiguration(int ntdcs);
        void SetTrigConfiguration(IniFile *inifile,int ntdcs);
        void SetTDCDetectionMode(Data16 mode,int ntdcs);
        void SetTDCResolution(Data16 lsb,int ntdcs);
        void SetTDCDeadTime(Data16 time,int ntdcs);
        void SetTDCHeadTrailer(Data16 mode,int ntdcs);
        void SetTDCEventSize(Data16 size,int ntdcs);
        void SwitchChannels(IniFile *inifile,int ntdcs);
        void SetIRQ(Data32 level, Data32 count,int ntdcs);
        void SetBlockTransferMode(Data16 mode,int ntdcs);
        void Set(IniFile *inifile,int ntdcs);
        void CheckStatus(CVErrorCodes status) const;
        int ReadBlockD32(Uint tdc, const Data16 address,
                         Data32 *data, const Uint words, bool ignore_berr);
        Uint Read(RAWData *DataList,int ntdcs);
};

2650

```

2651       *Source Code A.1: Description of C++ object v1190a.*

2652       The v1190a object, defined in the DAQ software as in Source Code A.1, offers the possibility to  
 2653       concatenate all TDCs in the readout setup into a single object containing a list of hardware addresses  
 2654       (addresses to access the TDCs' buffer through the VME crate) and each constructor and method acts  
 2655       on the list of TDCs.

2656

#### 2657      A.4.2 DataReader

2658      Enabled thanks to v1190a::SetBlockTransferMode(Data16 mode, int ntdcs), the data transfer  
 2659      is done via Block Transfer (BLT). Using BLT allows to tranfer a fixed number of events called a  
 2660      *block*. This is used together with an Almost Full Level (AFL) of the TDCs' output buffers, defined

2661 through `v1190a::SetIRQ(Data32 level, Data32 count, int ntdcs)`. This AFL gives the maxi-  
2662 mum amount of 32735 words (16 bits, corresponding to the depth of a TDC output buffer) that can  
2663 written in a buffer before an Interrupt Request (IRQ) is generated and seen by the VME Bridge,  
2664 stopping the data acquisition to transfer the content of each TDC buffers before resuming. For each  
2665 trigger, 6 words or more are written into the TDC buffer:

- 2666     • a **global header** providing information of the event number since the beginning of the data  
2667         acquisition,
- 2668     • a **TDC header**,
- 2669     • the **TDC data** (*if any*), 1 for each hit recorded during the event, providing the channel and the  
2670         time stamp associated to the hit,
- 2671     • a **TDC error** providing error flags,
- 2672     • a **TDC trailer**,
- 2673     • a **global trigger time tag** that provides the absolute trigger time relatively to the last reset,  
2674         and
- 2675     • a **global trailer** providing the total word count in the event.

2676 As previously described in Section ??, CMS RPC FEEs provide us with 100 ns long LVDS out-  
2677 put signals that are injected into the TDCs' input. Any avalanche signal that gives a signal above the  
2678 FEEs threshold is thus recorded by the TDCs as a hit within the match window. Each hit is assigned  
2679 to a specific TDC channel with a time stamp, with a precision of 100 ps. The reference time,  $t_0 = 0$ ,  
2680 is provided by the beginning of the match window. Thus for each trigger, coming from a scintillator  
2681 coïncidence or the pulse generator, a list of hits is stored into the TDCs' buffers and will then be  
2682 transferred into a ROOT Tree.

2683 When the BLT is used, it is easy to understand that the maximum number of words that have  
2684 been set as ALF will not be a finite number of events or, at least, the number of events that would  
2685 be recorded into the TDC buffers will not be a multiple of the block size. In the last BLT cycle to  
2686 tranfer data, the number of events to transfer will most propably be lower than the block size. In that  
2687 case, the TDC can add fillers at the end of the block but this option requires to send more data to the  
2688 computer and is thus a little slower. Another solution is to finish the transfer after the last event by  
2689 sending a bus error that states that the BLT reached the last event in the pile. This method has been  
2690 chosen in GIF++.

2692 Due to irradiation, an event in GIF++ can count up to 300 words per TDC. A limit of 4096 words  
2693 (12 bits) has been set to generate IRQ which represent from 14 to almost 700 events depending on  
2694 the average of hits collected per event. Then the block size has been set to 100 events with enabled  
2695 bus errors. When an AFL is reached for one of the TDCs, the VME bridge stops the acquisition by  
2696 sending a BUSY signal.

2698

2699     The data is then transferred one TDC at a time into a structure called `RAWData` (Source Code A.2).

2700

```
2701     struct RAWData{
2702         vector<int>           *EventList;
2703         vector<int>           *NHitsList;
2704         vector<int>           *QFlagList;
2705         vector<vector<int>>   *Channellist;
2706         vector<vector<float>>  *TimeStampList;
2707     };
```

2702                 *Source Code A.2: Description of data holding C++ structure `RAWData`.*

2703     In order to organize the data transfer and the data storage, an object called `DataReader` was  
 2704     created (Source Code A.3). On one hand, it has `v1718` and `v1190a` objects as private members for  
 2705     communication purposes, such as VME modules settings via the configuration file `*iniFile` or data  
 2706     read-out through `v1190a::Read()` and on the other hand, it contains the structure `RAWData` that allows  
 2707     to organise the data in vectors reproducing the tree structure of a ROOT file.

2708

```
2709     class DataReader
2710     {
2711         private:
2712             bool      StopFlag;
2713             IniFile *iniFile;
2714             Data32   MaxTriggers;
2715             v1718   *VME;
2716             int      nTDCs;
2717             v1190a  *TDCs;
2718             RAWData TDCData;
```

2719                 **public**:
2720 DataReader();
2721 **virtual** ~DataReader();
2722 **void** SetIniFile(string inifilename);
2723 **void** SetMaxTriggers();
2724 Data32 GetMaxTriggers();
2725 **void** SetVME();
2726 **void** SetTDC();
2727 **int** GetQFlag(Uint it);
2728 **void** Init(string inifilename);
2729 **void** FlushBuffer();
2730 **void** Update();
2731 string GetFileName();
2732 **void** WriteRunRegistry(string filename);
2733 **void** Run();

2710                 *Source Code A.3: Description of C++ object `DataReader`.*

2711     Each event is transferred from `TDCData` and saved into branches of a ROOT `TTree` as 3 integers  
 2712     that represent the event ID (`EventCount`), the number of hits read from the TDCs (`nHits`), and the  
 2713     quality flag that provides information for any problem in the data transfer (`qflag`), and 2 lists of  
 2714     `nHits` elements containing the fired TDC channels (`TDCCh`) and their respective time stamps (`TDCTS`),  
 2715     as presented in Source Code A.4. The ROOT file file is named using information contained into  
 2716     the configuration file, presented in section A.5.2. The needed information is extracted using method  
 2717     `DataReader::GetFileName()` and allow to build the output filename format `ScanXXXXXX_HVX_DAQ.root`

2718 where ScanXXXXXX is a 6 digit number representing the scan number into GIFT++ database and HVX  
 2719 the HV step within the scan that can be more than a single digit. An example of ROOT data file is  
 2720 provided with Figure A.3.

```
2721
RAWData TDCData;
TFile *outputFile = new TFile(outputFileName.c_str(),"recreate");
TTree *RAWDataTree = new TTree("RAWData","RAWData");

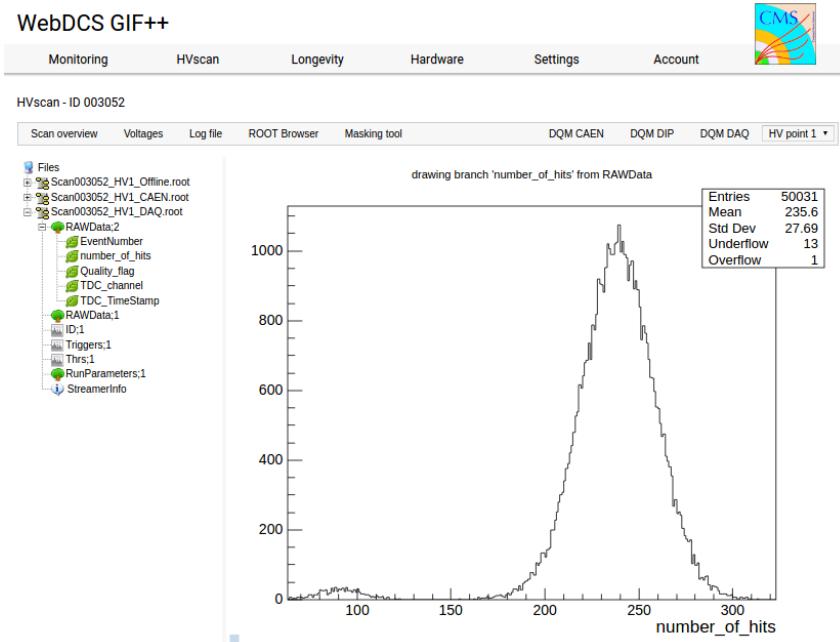
int EventCount = -9;
int nHits = -8;
int qflag = -7;
vector<int> TDCCh;
vector<float> TDCTS;

RAWDataTree->Branch("EventNumber",&EventCount, "EventNumber/I");
RAWDataTree->Branch("number_of_hits",&nHits,"number_of_hits/I");
RAWDataTree->Branch("Quality_flag",&qflag,"Quality_flag/I");
RAWDataTree->Branch("TDC_channel",&TDCCh);
RAWDataTree->Branch("TDC_TimeStamp",&TDCTS);

2722
//...
//Here read the TDC data using v1190a::Read() and place it into
//TDCData for as long as you didn't collect the requested amount
//of data.
//...

for(Uint i=0; i<TDCData.EventList->size(); i++){
    EventCount = TDCData.EventList->at(i);
    nHits = TDCData.NHitsList->at(i);
    qflag = TDCData.QFlagList->at(i);
    TDCCh = TDCData.ChannelList->at(i);
    TDCTS = TDCData.TimeStampList->at(i);
    RAWDataTree->Fill();
}
```

2723 *Source Code A.4: Highlight of the data transfer and organisation within DataReader::Run() after the data has been collected into TDCData.*



*Figure A.3: Structure of the ROOT output file generated by the DAQ. The 5 branches (EventNumber, number\_of\_hits, Quality\_flag, TDC\_channel and TDC\_TimeStamp) are visible on the left panel of the ROOT browser. On the right panel is visible the histogram corresponding to the variable nHits. In this specific example, there were approximately 50k events recorded to measure the gamma irradiation rate on the detectors. Each event is stored as a single entry in the TTree.*

#### 2724    A.4.3 Data quality flag

2725    Among the parameters that are recorded for each event, the quality flag, defined in Source Code A.5,  
 2726    is determined on the fly by checking the data recorded by every single TDC. From method `v1190a::Read()`,  
 2727    it can be understood that the content of each TDC buffer is readout one TDC at a time. Entries are  
 2728    created in the data list for the first TDC and then, when the second buffer is readout, events corre-  
 2729    sponding to entries that have already been created to store data for the previous TDC are added to  
 2730    the existing list element. On the contrary, when an event entry has not been yet created in the data  
 2731    list, a new entry is created.

```
2732
  typedef enum _QualityFlag {
    GOOD      = 1,
    CORRUPTED = 0
} QualityFlag;
```

2734    *Source Code A.5: Definition of the quality flag `enum`.*

2735    It is possible that each TDC buffer contains a different number of events. In cases where the first  
 2736    element in the buffer list is an event for corresponds to a new entry, the difference in between the  
 2737    entry from the buffer and the last entry in the data list is recorded and checked. If it is greater than 1,  
 2738    what should never be the case, the quality flag is set to CORRUPTED for this TDC and an empty entry  
 2739    is created in the place of the missing ones. Missing entries are believe to be the result of a bad hold

2740 on the TDC buffers at the moment of the readout. Indeed, the software hold is effective only on 1  
 2741 TDC at a time and no solution as been found yet to completely block the writting in the buffers when  
 2742 an IRQ is received.

2743 At the end of each BLT cycle, the ID of the last entry stored for each TDC buffer is not recorded.  
 2744 When starting the next cycle, if the first entry in the pile corresponds to an event already existing  
 2745 in the list, the readout will start from this list element and will not be able to check the difference  
 2746 in between this entry's ID and the one of the last entry that was recorded for this TDC buffer in  
 2747 the previous cycle. In the case events were missing, the flag stays at its initial value of 0, which is  
 2748 similar to CORRUPTED and it is assumed that then this TDC will not contribute to `number_of_hits`,  
 2749 `TDC_channel` or `TDC_TimeStamp`.

2750 Finally, since there will be 1 `RAWData` entry per TDC for each event (meaning `nTDCs` entries,  
 2751 referring to `DataReader` private attribute), the individual flags of each TDC will be added together.  
 2752 The final format is an integer composed `nTDCs` digits where each digit is the flag of a specific TDC.  
 2753 This is constructed using powers of 10 like follows:

```
2754 TDC 0: QFlag = 100 × _QualityFlag
2755 TDC 1: QFlag = 101 × _QualityFlag
2756 ...
2757 TDC N: QFlag = 10N × _QualityFlag
```

2758 and the final flag to be with N digits:

```
2759 QFlag = n....3210
```

2760 each digit being 1 or 0. Below is given an example with a 4 TDCs setup.

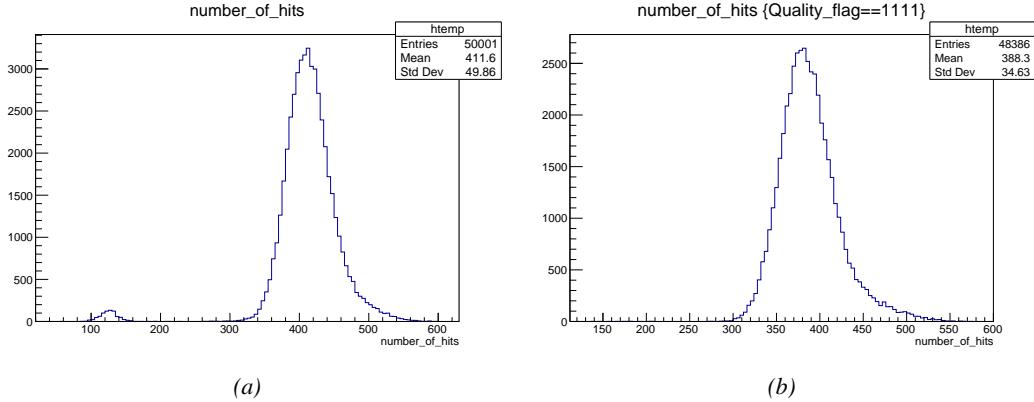
```
2761 If all TDCs were good : QFlag = 1111,
2762 but if TDC 2 was corrupted : QFlag = 1011.
```

2763 When data taking is over and the data contained in the dynamical `RAWData` structure is transferred  
 2764 to the ROOT file, all the 0s are changed into 2s by calling the method `DataReader::GetQFlag()`.  
 2765 This will help translating the flag without knowing the number of TDCs beforehand. Indeed, a flag  
 2766 111 could be due to a 3 TDC setup with 3 good individual TDC flags or to a more than 3 TDC setup  
 2767 with TDCs those ID is greater than 2 being CORRUPTED, thus giving a 0.

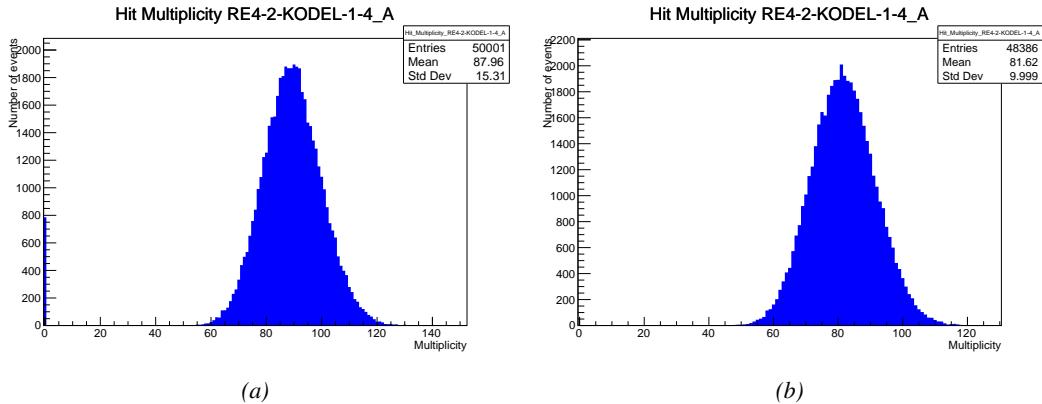
2768 The quality flag has been introduced quite late, in October 2017 only, to the list of GIFT++ DAQ  
 2769 parameters to be recorded into the output ROOT file. Before this addition, the missing data, corrupting  
 2770 the quality for the offline analysis, was contributing to artificially fill data with lower multiplicity.  
 2771 Looking at `TBranch number_of_hits` provides an information about the data of the full GIFT++  
 2772 setup. When a TDC is not able to transfer data for a specific event, the effect is a reduction of the  
 2773 total number of hits recorded in the full setup, this is what can be seen from Figure A.4. After offline  
 2774 reconstruction detector by detector, the effect of missing events can be seen in the artificially filled  
 2775 bin at multiplicity 0 shown in Figure A.5. Nonetheless, for data with high irradiation levels, as it is  
 2776 the case for Figure A.5a, discarding the fake multiplicity 0 data can be done easily during the offline  
 2777 analysis. At lower radiation, the missing events contribution becomes more problematic as the multi-  
 2778 tiplicity distribution overlaps the multiplicity 0 and that in the same time the proportion of missing

2779 events decreases. Attempts to fit the distribution with a Poisson or skew distribution function were  
 2780 not conclusive and this very problem has been at the origin of the quality flag that allows to give a  
 2781 non ambiguous information about each event quality.

2782



*Figure A.4: The effect of the quality flag is explained by presenting the content of TBranch `number_of_hits` of a data file without `Quality_flag` in Figure A.4a and the content of the same TBranch for data corresponding to a `Quality_flag` where all TDCs were labelled as `GOOD` in Figure A.4b taken with similar conditions. It can be noted that the number of entries in Figure A.4b is slightly lower than in Figure A.4a due to the excluded events.*



*Figure A.5: Using the same data as previously showed in Figure A.4, the effect of the quality flag is explained by presenting the reconstructed hit multiplicity of a data file without `Quality_flag` in Figure A.5a and the reconstructed content of the same RPC partition for data corresponding to a `Quality_flag` where all TDCs were labelled as `GOOD` in Figure A.5b taken with similar conditions. The artificial high content of bin 0 is completely suppressed.*

## A.5 Communications

2783 To ensure data readout and dialog in between the machine and the TDCs or in between the webDCS  
 2784 and the DAQ, different communication solutions were used. First of all, it is important to have a

module to allow the communication in between the TDCs and the computer from which the DAQ operates. When this communication is effective, shifters using the webDCS to control data taking can thus send instructions to the DAQ.

2789

## **2790 A.5.1 V1718 USB Bridge**

In the previous section, the data transfer as been discussed. The importance of the `v1718` object (Source Code A.6), used as private member of `DataReader`, was not explicated. VME master modules are used for communication purposes as they host the USB port that connects the powered crate buffer to the computer were the DAQ is installed. From the source code point of view, this object is used to control the communication status, by reading the returned error codes with `v1718::CheckStatus()`, or to check for IRQs coming from the TDCs through `v1718::CheckIRQ()`. Finally, to ensure that triggers are blocked at the hardware level, a NIM pulse is sent out of one of the 5 programmable outputs (`v1718::SendBUSY()`) to the VETO of the coïndidence module where the trigger signals originate from. As long as this signal is ON, no trigger can reach the TDCs anymore.

```
2800 class v1718{
    private:
        int Handle;
        Data32 Data;           // Data
        CVIRQLevels Level;     // Interrupt level
        CVAddressModifier AM;   // Addressing Mode
        CVDataWidth dataSize;  // Data Format
        Data32 BaseAddress;    // Base Address

    public:
        v1718(IniFile *inifile);
        ~v1718();
        long GetHandle(void) const;
        int SetData(Data16 data);
        GetData(void);
        int SetLevel(CVIRQLevels level);
        GetLevel(void);
        int SetAM(CVAddressModifier am);
        CVAddressModifier GetAM(void);
        int SetDatasize(CVDataWidth datasize);
        GetDataSize(void);
        CVDataWidth SetBaseAddress(Data16 baseaddress);
        GetBaseAddress(void);
        void CheckStatus(CVErrorCodes status) const;
        bool CheckIRQ();
        void SetPulsers();
        void SendBUSY(BusyLevel level);
};

2801
```

2802 *Source Code A.6: Description of C++ object v1718.*

## 2803 A.5.2 Configuration file

2804 The DAQ software takes as input a configuration file written using INI standard [76]. This file is  
2805 partly filled with the information provided by the shifters when starting data acquisition using the  
2806 webDCS, as shown by Figure A.6. This information is written in section [**General**] and will later

2807 be stored in the ROOT file that contains the DAQ data as can be seen from Figure A.3. Indeed,  
 2808 another `TTree` called `RunParameters` as well as the 2 histograms `ID`, containing the scan number,  
 2809 start and stop time stamps, and `Triggers`, containing the number of triggers requested by the shifter,  
 2810 are available in the data files. Moreover, `ScanID` and `HV` are then used to construct the file name  
 2811 thanks to the method `DataReader::GetFileName()`.

Chamber	RE2-2-NPD-BARC-8	RE4-2-CERN-106	RE2-3-NPD-BARC-9	RE4-2-CERN-105	RE4-2-KODEL-1-4	Max triggers
HV <sub>eff</sub> 1	8600	8500	8600	8500	6500	
HV <sub>eff</sub> 2	8700	8600	8700	8600	6600	
HV <sub>eff</sub> 3	8800	8700	8800	8700	6700	
HV <sub>eff</sub> 4	8900	8800	8900	8800	6800	
HV <sub>eff</sub> 5	9000	8900	9000	8900	6900	
HV <sub>eff</sub> 6	9100	9000	9100	9000	7000	
HV <sub>eff</sub> 7	9200	9100	9200	9100	7100	
HV <sub>eff</sub> 8	9300	9200	9300	9200	7200	
HV <sub>eff</sub> 9	9400	9300	9400	9300	7300	
HV <sub>eff</sub> 10	9500	9400	9500	9400	7400	

Figure A.6: WebDCS DAQ scan page. On this page, shifters need to choose the type of scan (Rate, Efficiency or Noise Reference scan), the gamma source configuration at the moment of data taking, the beam configuration, and the trigger mode. These information will be stored in the DAQ ROOT output. Are also given the minimal measurement time and waiting time after ramping up of the detectors is over before starting the data acquisition. Then, the list of HV points to scan and the number of triggers for each run of the scan are given in the table underneath.

2812 The rest of the information is written beforehand in the configuration file template, as explicated  
 2813 in Source Code A.7, and contains the hardware addresses to the different VME modules in the  
 2814 setup as well as settings for the TDCs. As the TDC settings available in the configuration file are not  
 2815 supposed to be modified, an improvement would be to remove them from the configuration file and  
 2816 to hardcode them inside of the DAQ code itself or to place them into a different INI file that would  
 2817 host only the TDC settings to lower the probability for a bad manipulation of the configuration file  
 2818 that can be modified from one of webDCS' menus.

2819

```
[General]
Tdcs=4
ScanID=$scanid
HV=$HV
RunType=$runtype
MaxTriggers=$maxtriggers
Beam=$beam
[VMEInterface]
Type=V1718
BaseAddress=0xFF0000
Name=VmeInterface
[TDC0]
Type=V1190A
BaseAddress=0x00000000
Name=Tdc0
StatusA00-15=1
StatusA16-31=1
StatusB00-15=1
StatusB16-31=1
StatusC00-15=1
StatusC16-31=1
StatusD00-15=1
StatusD16-31=1
[TDC1]
Type=V1190A
BaseAddress=0x11110000
Name=Tdc1
StatusA00-15=1
StatusA16-31=1
StatusB00-15=1
StatusB16-31=1
StatusC00-15=1
StatusC16-31=1
StatusD00-15=1
StatusD16-31=1
[TDC2]
Type=V1190A
BaseAddress=0x22220000
Name=Tdc2
StatusA00-15=1
StatusA16-31=1
StatusB00-15=1
StatusB16-31=1
StatusC00-15=1
StatusC16-31=1
StatusD00-15=1
StatusD16-31=1
[TDC3]
Type=V1190A
BaseAddress=0x44440000
Name=Tdc3
StatusA00-15=1
StatusA16-31=1
StatusB00-15=1
StatusB16-31=1
StatusC00-15=1
StatusC16-31=1
StatusD00-15=1
StatusD16-31=1
[TDCSettings]
TriggerExtraSearchMargin=0
TriggerRejectMargin=0
TriggerTimeSubtraction=0b1
TdcDetectionMode=0b01
TdcResolution=0b10
TdcDeadTime=0b00
TdcHeadTrailer=0b1
TdcEventSize=0b1001
TdcTestMode=0b0
BLTMode=1
```

2820

*Source Code A.7: INI configuration file template for 4 TDCs. In section [General], the number of TDCs is explicitated and information about the ongoing run is given. Then, there are sections for each and every VME modules. There buffer addresses are given and for the TDCs, the list of channels to enable is given. Finally, in section [TDCSettings], a part of the TDC settings are given.*

2821     In order to retrieve the information of the configuration file, the object `IniFile` has been developed  
 2822     to provide an INI parser, presented in Source Code A.8. It contains private methods returning a  
 2823     boolean to check the type of line written in the file, whether a comment, a group header or a key line  
 2824     (`IniFile::CheckIfComment()`, `IniFile::CheckIfGroup()` and `IniFile::CheckIfToken()`). The  
 2825     key may sometimes be referred to as *token* in the source code. Moreover, the private element  
 2826     `FileData` is a map of `const string` to `string` that allows to store the data contained inside the  
 2827     configuration file via the public method `IniFile::GetFileData()` following the formatting (see  
 2828     method `IniFile::Read()`):

```
2829
2830     string group, token, value;
2831     // Get the field values for the 3 strings.
2832     // Then concatenate group and token together as a single string
2833     // with a dot separation.
2834     token = group + "." + token;
2835     FileData[token] = value;
```

2832     More methods have been written to translate the different keys into the right variable format  
 2833     when used by the DAQ. For example, to get a `float` value out of the configuration file data, knowing  
 2834     the group and the key needed, the method `IniFile::floatType()` can be used. It takes 3 arguments  
 2835     being the group name and key name (both `string`), and a default `float` value used as exception in  
 2836     the case the expected combination of group and key cannot be found in the configuration file. This  
 2837     default value is then used and the DAQ continues on working after sending an alert in the log file for  
 2838     further debugging.

```

2839 typedef map< const string, string > IniFileData;
2840
class IniFile{
    private:
        bool          CheckIfComment (string line);
        bool          CheckIfGroup(string line, string& group);
        bool          CheckIfToken(string line, string& key, string& value);
        string         FileName;
        IniFileData   FileData;
        int           Error;

    public:
        IniFile();
        IniFile(string filename);
        virtual      ~IniFile();

        // Basic file operations
        void          SetFileName(string filename);
        int           Read();
        int           Write();
        IniFileData GetFileData();

        // Data readout methods
        Data32         addressType (string groupname, string keyname, Data32
→     defaultvalue);
        long          intType     (string groupname, string keyname, long
→     defaultvalue);
        long long    longType    (string groupname, string keyname, long long
→     defaultvalue );
        string         stringType  (string groupname, string keyname, string
→     defaultvalue );
        float         floatType   (string groupname, string keyname, float
→     defaultvalue );

        // Error methods
        string         GetErrorMsg();
    };

```

2841       *Source Code A.8: Description of C++ object `IniFile` used as a parser for INI file format.*

### 2842       A.5.3 WebDCS/DAQ intercommunication

2843       When shifters send instructions to the DAQ via the configuration file, it is the webDCS itself that  
 2844       gives the start command to the DAQ and then the 2 softwares use inter-process communication  
 2845       through file to synchronise themselves. This communication file is represented by the variable **const**  
 2846       string \_\_runstatuspath.

2847       On one side, the webDCS sends commands or status that are readout by the DAQ:

- 2848       • INIT, status sent when launching a scan and read via function `CtrlRunStatus(...)`,
- 2849       • START, command to start data taking and read via function `CheckSTART()`,
- 2850       • STOP, command to stop data taking at the end of the scan and read via function `CheckSTOP()`,  
 2851        and
- 2852       • KILL, command to kill data taking sent by user and read via function `CheckKILL()`

2853 and on the other, the DAQ sends status that are controled by the webDCS:

- 2854     ● `DAQ_RDY`, sent with `SendDAQReady()` to signify that the DAQ is ready to receive commands  
2855       from the webDCS,
- 2856     ● `RUNNING`, sent with `SendDAQRunning()` to signify that the DAQ is taking data,
- 2857     ● `DAQ_ERR`, sent with `SendDAQError()` to signify that the DAQ didn't receive the expected com-  
2858       mand from the webDCS or that the launch command didn't have the right number of argu-  
2859       ments,
- 2860     ● `RD_ERR`, sent when the DAQ wasn't able to read the communication file, and
- 2861     ● `WR_ERR`, sent when the DAQ wasn't able to write into the communication file.

#### 2862     **A.5.4 Example of inter-process communication cycle**

2863 Under normal conditions, the webDCS and the DAQ processes exchange commands and status via  
2864 the file hosted at the address `__runstatuspath`, as explained in subsection A.5.3. An example of  
2865 cycle is given in Table A.1. In this example, the steps 3 to 5 are repeated as long as the webDCS tells  
2866 the DAQ to take data. A data taking cycle is the equivalent as what is called a *Scan* in GIFT++ jargon,  
2867 referring to a set a runs with several HV steps. Each repetition of steps 3 to 5 is then equivalent to a  
2868 single *Run*.

2869     At any moment during the data taking, for any reason, the shifter can decide that the data taking  
2870 needs to be stopped before it reached the end of the scheduled cycle. Thus at any moment on the  
2871 cycle, the content of the inter-process communication file will be changed to `KILL` and the DAQ will  
2872 shut down right away. The DAQ checks for `KILL` signals every 5s after the TDCs configuration is  
2873 over. So far, the function `CheckKILL()` has been used only inside of the data taking loop of method  
2874 `DataReader::Run()` and thus, if the shifter decides to KILL the data taking during the TDC con-  
2875 figuration phase or the HV ramping in between 2 HV steps, the DAQ will not be stopped smoothly  
2876 and a *force kill* command will be sent to stop the DAQ process that is still awake on the computer.  
2877 Improvements can be brought on this part of the software to make sure that the DAQ can safely  
2878 shutdown at any moment.

#### 2881     **A.6 Software export**

2882 In section A.2 was discussed the fact that the DAQ as written in its last version is not a standalone  
2883 software. It is possible to make it a standalone program that could be adapted to any VME setup  
2884 using V1190A and V1718 modules by creating a GUI for the software or by printing the log mes-  
2885 sages that are normally printed in the webDCS through the log file, directly into the terminal. This  
2886 method was used by the DAQ up to version 3.0 moment where the webDCS was completed. Also, it  
2887 is possible to check branches of DAQ v2.X to have example of communication through a terminal.

2888     DAQ v2.X is nonetheless limited in it's possibilities and requires a lot of offline manual interven-  
2889 tions from the users. Indeed, there is no communication of the software with the detectors' power  
2890 supply system that would allow for a user a predefine a list of voltages to operate the detectors at

step	actions of webDCS	status of DAQ	<code>__runstatuspath</code>
1	launch DAQ ramp voltages ramping over wait for currents stabilization	readout of IniFile configuration of TDCs	INIT
2		configuration done send DAQ ready wait for START signal	DAQ_RDY
3	waiting time over send START		START
4	wait for run to end monitor DAQ run status	data taking ongoing check for KILL signal	RUNNING
5		run over send DAQ_RDY wait for next DCS signal	DAQ_RDY
6	ramp voltages ramping over wait for currents stabilization		DAQ_RDY
3	waiting time over send START		START
4	wait for run to end monitor DAQ run status	update IniFile information data taking ongoing check for KILL signal	RUNNING
5		run over send DAQ_RDY wait for next DCS signal	DAQ_RDY
7	send command STOP	DAQ shuts down	STOP

Table A.1: Inter-process communication cycles in between the webDCS and the DAQ through file string signals.

2892 and loop over to take data without any further manual intervention. In v2.X, the data is taken for a  
2893 single detector setting and at the end of each run, the softwares asks the user if he intends on taking  
2894 more runs. If so, the software invites the user to set the operating voltages accordingly to what is  
2895 necessary and to manual update the configuration file in consequence. This working mode can be a  
2896 very first approach before an evolution and has been successfully used by colleagues from different  
2897 collaborations.

2898  
2899 For a more robust operation, it is recommended to develop a GUI or a web application to inter-  
2900 face the DAQ. Moreover, to limit the amount of manual interventions, and thus the probability to  
2901 make mistakes, it is also recommended to add an extra feature into the DAQ by installing the HV  
2902 Wrapper library provided by CAEN of which an example of use in a similar DAQ software devel-  
2903 opped by a master student of UGent, and called TinyDAQ, is provided on UGent's github. Then, this  
2904 HV Wrapper will help you communicating with and give instructions to a CAEN HV powered crate  
2905 and can be added into the DAQ at the same level where the communication with the user was made  
2906 in DAQ v2.X. In case you are using another kind of power system for your detectors, it is stringly  
2907 adviced to use HV modules or crates that can be remotely controled via a using C++ libraries.  
2908

# B

2909

2910

## Details on the offline analysis package

2911 The data collected in GIF++ thanks to the DAQ described in Appendix A is difficult to interpret by  
2912 a human user that doesn't have a clear idea of the raw data architecture of the ROOT data files. In  
2913 order to render the data human readable, a C++ offline analysis tool was designed to provide users  
2914 with detector by detector histograms that give a clear overview of the parameters monitored during  
2915 the data acquisition [77]. In this appendix, details about this software in the context of GIF++, as of  
2916 how the software was written and how it functions will be given.

### 2917 B.1 GIF++ Offline Analysis file tree

2918 GIF++ Offline Analysis source code is fully available on github at [https://github.com/aafagot/GIF\\_OfflineAnalysis](https://github.com/aafagot/GIF_OfflineAnalysis). The software requires ROOT as non-optionnal dependency  
2919 as it takes ROOT files in input and write an output ROOT file containing histograms. To compile the  
2920 GIF++ Offline Analysis project is compiled with cmake. To compile, first a build/ directory must  
2921 be created to compile from there:

```
2923 mkdir build
2924 cd build
2925 cmake ..
2926 make
2927 make install
```

2925 To clean the directory and create a new build directory, the bash script cleandir.sh can be used:

```
2926
2927 ./cleandir.sh
```

2928 The source code tree is provided below along with comments to give an overview of the files' con-  
2929 tent. The different objects created for this project (`Infrastructure`, `Trolley`, `RPC`, `Mapping`, `RPCHit`,  
2930 `RPCCluster` and `Inifile`) will be described in details in the following sections.

2931

```

GIF_OfflineAnalysis
├── bin
│   └── offlineanalysis ..... EXECUTABLE
├── build..... CMAKE COMPILATION DIRECTORY
└── ...
    ├── include..... LIST OF C++ HEADER FILES
    │   ├── Cluster.h..... DECLARATION OF OBJECT RPCCLUSTER
    │   ├── Current.h..... DECLARATION OF GETCURRENT ANALYSIS MACRO
    │   ├── GIFTrolley.h..... DECLARATION OF OBJECT TROLLEY
    │   ├── Infrastructure.h..... DECLARATION OF OBJECT INFRASTRUCTURE
    │   ├── IniFile.h..... DECLARATION OF OBJECT INI FILE FORINI PARSER
    │   ├── Mapping.h..... DECLARATION OF OBJECT MAPPING
    │   ├── MsgSvc.h..... DECLARATION OF OFFLINE LOG MESSAGES
    │   ├── OfflineAnalysis.h..... DECLARATION OF DATA ANALYSIS MACRO
    │   ├── RPCTracker.h..... DECLARATION OF OBJECT RPC
    │   ├── RPCHit.h..... DECLARATION OF OBJECT RPCHIT
    │   ├── types.h..... DEFINITION OF USEFUL VARIABLE TYPES
    │   └── utils.h..... DECLARATION OF USEFUL FUNCTIONS
    ├── obj..... BINARY FILES CREATED BY COMPILER
    └── ...
        ├── src..... LIST OF C++ SOURCE FILES
        │   ├── Cluster.cc..... DEFINITION OF OBJECT RPCCLUSTER
        │   ├── Current.cc .....

```

## 2932 B.2 Usage of the Offline Analysis

2933 In order to use the Offline Analysis tool, it is necessary to know the Scan number and the HV Step  
 2934 of the run that needs to be analysed. This information needs to be written in the following format:

2935

2936 Scan00XXXX\_HVY

2937 where XXXX is the scan ID and y is the high voltage step (in case of a high voltage scan, data will be  
 2938 taken for several HV steps). This format corresponds to the base name of data files in the database

2939 of the GIF++ webDCS. Usually, the offline analysis tool is automatically called by the webDCS at  
 2940 the end of data taking or by a user from the webDCS panel if an update of the tool was brought.  
 2941 Nonetheless, an expert can locally launch the analysis for tests on the GIF++ computer, or a user can  
 2942 get the code on its local machine from github and download data from the webDCS for its own anal-  
 2943 ysis. To launch the code, the following command can be used from the `GIF_OfflineAnalysis` folder:

2944

```
2945 bin/offlineanalysis /path/to/Scan00XXXX_HVY
```

2946 where, `/path/to/Scan00XXXX_HVY` refers to the local data files. Then, the offline tool will by itself  
 2947 take care of finding all available ROOT data files present in the folder, as listed below:

2948

- `Scan00XXXX_HVY_DAQ.root` containing the TDC data as described in Appendix ?? (events, hit  
 2949 and timestamp lists), and
- `Scan00XXXX_HVY_CAEN.root` containing the CAEN mainframe data recorded by the monitor-  
 2950 ing tool webDCS during data taking (HVs and currents of every HV channels). This file is  
 2952 created independently of the DAQ.

2953

## B.2.1 Output of the offline tool

2954

### B.2.1.1 ROOT file

2955

The analysis gives in output ROOT datafiles that are saved into the data folder and called using the  
 2956 naming convention `Scan00XXXX_HVY_Offline.root`. Inside those, a list of `TH1` histograms can be  
 2957 found. Its size will vary as a function of the number of detectors in the setup as each set of histograms  
 2958 is produced detector by detector. For each partition of each chamber, can be found:

2959

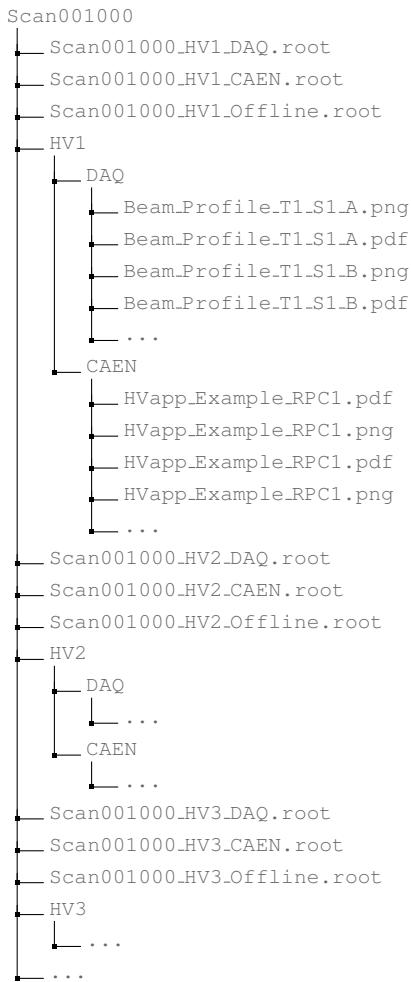
- `Time_Profile_Tt_Sc_p` shows the time profile of all recorded events (number of events per  
 2960 time bin),
- `Hit_Profile_Tt_Sc_p` shows the hit profile of all recorded events (number of events per chan-  
 2962 nel),
- `Hit_Multiplicity_Tt_Sc_p` shows the hit multiplicity (number of hits per event) of all recorded  
 2964 events (number of occurrences per multiplicity bin),
- `Strip_Mean_Noise_Tt_Sc_p` shows noise/gamma rate per unit area for each strip in a se-  
 2966 lected time range. After filters are applied on `Time_Profile_Tt_Sc_p`, the filtered version  
 2967 of `Hit_Profile_Tt_Sc_p` is normalised to the total integrated time and active detection area  
 2968 of a single channel,
- `Strip_Activity_Tt_Sc_p` shows noise/gamma activity for each strip (normalised version of  
 2970 previous histogram - strip activity = strip rate / average partition rate),
- `Strip_Homogeneity_Tt_Sc_p` shows the *homogeneity* of a given partition ( $\text{homogeneity} = \exp(-\text{strip rates standard deviation(strip rates in partition/average partition rate)})$ ),
- `mask_Strip_Mean_Noise_Tt_Sc_p` shows noise/gamma rate per unit area for each masked  
 2974 strip in a selected time range. Offline, the user can control the noise/gamma rate and decide to  
 2975 mask the strips that are judged to be noisy or dead. This is done via the *Masking Tool* provided  
 2976 by the webDCS,

- 2977     ● `mask_Strip_Activity_Tt_Sc_p` shows noise/gamma activity per unit area for each masked  
2978       strip with respect to the average rate of active strips,
- 2979     ● `NoiseCSize_H_Tt_Sc_p` shows noise/gamma cluster size, a cluster being constructed out of  
2980       adjacent strips giving a signal at the *same time* (hits within a time window of 25 ns),
- 2981     ● `NoiseCMult_H_Tt_Sc_p` shows noise/gamma cluster multiplicity (number of reconstructed  
2982       clusters per event),
- 2983     ● `Chip_Mean_Noise_Tt_Sc_p` shows the same information than `Strip_Mean_Noise_Tt_Scp` us-  
2984       ing a different binning (1 chip corresponds to 8 strips),
- 2985     ● `Chip_Activity_Tt_Sc_p` shows the same information than `Strip_Activity_Tt_Scp` using  
2986       chip binning,
- 2987     ● `Chip_Homogeneity_Tt_Sc_p` shows the homogeneity of a given partition using chip binning,
- 2988     ● `Beam_Profile_Tt_Sc_p` shows the estimated beam profile when taking efficiency scan. This  
2989       is obtained by filtering `Time_Profile_Tt_Sc_p` to only consider the muon peak where the  
2990       noise/gamma background has been subtracted. The resulting hit profile corresponds to the  
2991       beam profile on the detector channels,
- 2992     ● `L0_Efficiency_Tt_Sc_p` shows the level 0 efficiency that was estimated **without** muon track-  
2993       ing,
- 2994     ● `MuonCSize_H_Tt_Sc_p` shows the level 0 muon cluster size that was estimated **without** muon  
2995       tracking, and
- 2996     ● `MuonCMult_H_Tt_Sc_p` shows the level 0 muon cluster multiplicity that was estimated **without**  
2997       muon tracking.

2998     In the histogram labels,  $t$  stands for the trolley number (1 or 3),  $c$  for the chamber slot label in  
2999       trolley  $t$  and  $p$  for the partition label (A, B, C or D depending on the chamber layout) as explained  
3000       in Chapter 5.4.

3001     In the context of GIF++, an extra script called by the webDCS is called to extract the histograms  
3002       from the ROOT files. The histograms are then stored in PNG and PDF formats into the correspond-  
3003       ing folder (a single folder per HV step, so per ROOT file). the goal is to then display the histograms  
3004       on the Data Quality Monitoring (DQM) page of the webDCS in order for the users to control the  
3005       quality of the data taking at the end of data taking. An example of histogram organisation is given  
3006       below:

3007  
3008



3009     *Here can put some screens from the webDCS to show the DQM and the plots available to users.*  
 3010

### 3011     **B.2.1.2 CSV files**

3012     Moreover, up to 3 CSV files can be created depending on which ones of the 3 input files were in the  
 3013     data folder:

- 3014     ● `Offline-Corrupted.csv` , is used to keep track of the amount of data that was corrupted and  
 3015       removed from old data format files that don't contain any data quality flag.
- 3016     ● `Offline-Current.csv` , contains the summary of the currents and voltages applied on each  
 3017       RPC HV channel.
- 3018     ● `Offline-L0-EffC1.csv` , is used to write the efficiencies, cluster size and cluster multiplicity  
 3019       of efficiency runs. Note that `L0` refers here to *Level 0* and means that the results of efficiency and  
 3020       clusterization are a first approximation calculated without performing any muon tracking in

3021 between the different detectors. This offline tool provides the user with a preliminar calculation  
 3022 of the efficiency and of the muon event parameters. Another analysis software especially  
 3023 dedicated to muon tracking is called on selected data to retrieve the results of efficiency and  
 3024 muon clusterization using a tracking algorithm to discriminate noise or gamma from muons  
 3025 as muons are the only particles that pass through the full setup, leaving hits than can be used  
 3026 to reconstruct their tracks.

- 3027 • `Offline-Rate.csv`, is used to write the noise or gamma rates measured in the detector readout  
 3028 partitions.

3029 Note that these 4 CSV files are created along with their *headers* (`Offline-[...]-Header.csv`  
 3030 containing the names of each data columns) and are automatically merged together when the offline  
 3031 analysis tool is called from the webDCS, contrary to the case where the tool is runned locally from  
 3032 the terminal as the merging bash script is then not called. Thus, the resulting files, used to make  
 3033 official plots, are:

- 3034 • `Corrupted.csv`,  
 3035 • `Current.csv`,  
 3036 • `L0-EffCl.csv`.  
 3037 • `Rate.csv`.

### 3038 **B.3 Analysis inputs and information handling**

3039 The usage of the Offline Analysis tool as well as its output have been presented in the previous section  
 3040 It is now important to dig further and start looking at the source code and the inputs necessary  
 3041 for the tool to work. Indeed, other than the raw ROOT data files that are analysed, more information  
 3042 needs to be imported inside of the program to perform the analysis such as the description of the  
 3043 setup inside of GIFT++ at the time of data taking (number of trolleys, of RPCs, dimensions of the  
 3044 detectors, etc...) or the mapping that links the TDC channels to the coresponding RPC channels in  
 3045 order to translate the TDC information into human readable data. 2 files are used to transmit all this  
 3046 information:  
 3047

- 3048 • `Dimensions.ini`, that provides the necessary setup and RPC information, and  
 3049 • `ChannelsMapping.csv`, that gives the link between the TDC and RPC channels as well as the  
 3050 *mask* for each channel (masked or not?).

#### 3051 **B.3.1 Dimensions file and InFile parser**

3052 This input file, present in every data folder, allows the analysis tool to know of the number of active  
 3053 trolleys, the number of active RPCs in those trolleys, and the details about each RPCs such as  
 3054 the number of RPC gaps, the number of pseudo-rapidity partitions (for CMS-like prototypes), the  
 3055 number of strips per partion or the dimensions. To do so, there are 3 types of groups in the INI file  
 3056 architecture. A first general group, appearing only once at the head of the document, gives information  
 3057 about the number of active trolleys as well as their IDs, as presented in Source Code B.1. For

3058 each active trolley, a group similar to Source Code B.2 can be found containing information about  
 3059 the number of active detectors in the trolley and their IDs. Each trolley group as a `Tt` name format,  
 3060 where `t` is the trolley ID. Finally, for each detector stored in slots of an active trolley, there is a group  
 3061 providing information about their names and dimensions, as shown in Source Code B.3. Each slot  
 3062 group as a `TtSs` name format, where `s` is the slot ID of trolley `t` where the active RPC is hosted.

```
3063 [General]
3064 nTrolleys=2
  TrolleysID=13
```

3065 *Source Code B.1: Example of `[General]` group as might be found in `Dimensions.ini`. In Gif++, only 2 trolleys are available to hold RPCs and place them inside of the bunker for irradiation. The IDs of the trolleys are written in a single string as "13" and then read character by character by the program.*

```
3066 [T1]
  nSlots=4
  SlotsID=1234
```

3067 *Source Code B.2: Example of trolley group as might be found in `Dimensions.ini`. In this example, the file tells that there are 4 detectors placed in the holding slots of the trolley `T1` and that their IDs, written as a single string variable, are 1, 2, 3 and 4.*

```
3068 [T1S1]
  Name=RE2-2-NPD-BARC-8
  Partitions=3
  Gaps=3
  Gap1=BOT
  Gap2=TN
  Gap3=TW
  AreaGap1=11694.25
  AreaGap2=6432
  AreaGap3=4582.82
  Strips=32
  ActiveArea-A=157.8
  ActiveArea-B=121.69
  ActiveArea-C=93.03
```

3069 *Source Code B.3: Example of slot group as might be found in `Dimensions.ini`. In this example, the file provides information about a detector named `RE2-2-NPD-BARC-8`, having 3 pseudo-rapidity readout partitions and stored in slot `S1` of trolley `T1`. This is a CMS RE2-2 type of detector. This information will then be used for example to compute the rate per unit area calculation.*

3070 This information is readout and stored in a C++ object called `IniFile`, that parses the information  
 3071 in the INI input file and stores it into a local buffer for later use. This INI parser is the exact same  
 3072 one that was previously developed for the Gif++ DAQ and described in Appendix A.5.2.

### 3073 B.3.2 TDC to RPC link file and Mapping

3074 The same way the INI dimension file information is stored using `map`, the channel mapping and mask  
 3075 information is stored and accessed through `map`. First of all, the mapping CSV file is organised into  
 3076 3 columns separated by tabulations (and not by commas, as expected for CSV files as it is easier using  
 3077 streams to read tab or space separated data using C++):

3078

3079    RPC\_channel       TDC\_channel       mask

3080    using as formatting for each field:

3081  
3082    TSCCC        TCCC        M

3083 TSCCC is a 5-digit integer where  $\tau$  is the trolley ID,  $s$  the slot ID in which the RPC is held insite  
3084                  the trolley  $\tau$  and ccc is the RPC channel number, or *strip* number, that can take values up to  
3085                  3-digits depending on the detector,

3086 TCCC is a 4 digit integer where  $\tau$  is the TDC ID, ccc is the TDC channel number that can take values  
3087                  in between 0 and 127, and

3088 M is a 1-digit integer indicating if the channel should be considered ( $M = 1$ ) or discarded ( $M = 0$ )  
3089                  during analysis.

3090    This mapping and masking information is readout and stored thanks to the object `Mapping`, pre-  
3091    sented in Source Code B.4. Similarly to `IniFile` objects, this class has private methods. The first  
3092    one, `Mapping::CheckIfNewLine()` is used to find the newline character '`\n`' or return character  
3093    '`\r`' (depending on which kind of operating system interacted with the file). This is used for the  
3094    simple reason that the masking information has been introduced only during the year 2017 but the  
3095    channel mapping files exist since 2015 and the very beginning of data taking at GIF++. This means  
3096    that in the older data folders, before the upgrade, the channel mapping file only had 2 columns, the  
3097    RPC channel and the TDC channel. For compatibility reasons, this method helps controling the  
3098    character following the readout of the 2 first fields of a line. In case any end of line character is  
3099    found, no mask information is present in the file and the default  $M = 1$  is used. On the contrary, if  
3100    the next character was a tabulation or a space, the mask information is present.

3101    Once the 3 fields have been readout, the second private method `Mapping::CheckIfTDCCh()` is  
3102    used to control that the TDC channel is an existing TDC channel. Finally, the information is stored  
3103    into 3 different maps (`Link`, `ReverseLink` and `Mask`) thanks to the public method `Mapping::Read()`.  
3104    `Link` allows to get the RPC channel by knowing the TDC channel while `ReverseLink` does the op-  
3105    posite by returning the TDC channel by knowing the RPC channel. Finally, `Mask` returns the mask  
3106    associated to a given RPC channel.

```

3107
typedef map<Uint,Uint> MappingData;

3108
class Mapping {
    private:
        bool          CheckIfNewLine(char next);
        bool          CheckIfTDCCh(Uint channel);
        string         FileName;
        MappingData   Link;
        MappingData   ReverseLink;
        MappingData   Mask;
        int           Error;

    public:
        Mapping();
        Mapping(string baseName);
        ~Mapping();

        void SetFileName(const string filename);
        int Read();
        Uint GetLink(Uint tdcchannel);
        Uint GetReverse(Uint rpcchannel);
        Uint GetMask(Uint rpcchannel);
};


```

3109 *Source Code B.4: Description of C++ object Mapping used as a parser for the channel mapping and mask file.*

## 3110 **B.4 Description of GIF++ setup within the Offline Analysis tool**

3111 In the previous section, the tool input files have been discussed. The dimension file information is  
 3112 stored in a map hosted by the `IniFile` object. But this information is then used to create a series of  
 3113 new objects that helps defining the GIF++ infrastructure directly into the Offline Analysis. Indeed,  
 3114 from the `RPC`, to the more general `Infrastructure`, every element of the GIF++ infrastrucutre is  
 3115 recreated for each data analysis based on the information provided in input. All this information  
 3116 about the infrastructure will be used to assign each hit signal to a specific strip channel of a specific  
 3117 detector, and having a specific active area. This way, rate per unit area calculation is possible.  
 3118

### 3119 **B.4.1 RPC objects**

3120 `RPC` objects have been developped to represent physical active detectors in GIF++ at the moment  
 3121 of data taking. Thus, there are as many `RPC` objects created during the analysis than there were  
 3122 active `RPCs` tested during a run. Each `RPC` hosts the information present in the corresponding INI  
 3123 slot group, as shown in B.3, and organises it using a similar architecture. This can be seen from  
 3124 `Source Code B.5`.

3125 To make the object more compact, the lists of gap labels, of gap active areas and strip active  
 3126 areas are stored into `vector` dynamical containers. `RPC` objects are always contructed thanks to the  
 3127 dimension file information stored into the `IniFILE` and their ID, using the format `TtSs`. Using the  
 3128 `RPC` ID, the constructor calls the methods of `IniFILE` to initialise the `RPC`. The other constructors  
 3129 are not used but exist in case of need. Finally, some getters have been written to access the different  
 3130 private parameters storing the detector information.

```

3131 class RPC{
3132     private:
3133         string      name;           //RPC name as in webDCS database
3134         Uint        nGaps;          //Number of gaps in the RPC
3135         Uint        nPartitions;    //Number of partitions in the RPC
3136         Uint        nStrips;        //Number of strips per partition
3137         vector<string> gaps;       //List of gap labels (BOT, TOP, etc...)
3138         vector<float>  gapGeo;        //List of gap active areas
3139         vector<float>  stripGeo;      //List of strip active areas
3140
3141     public:
3142         RPC();
3143         RPC(string ID, IniFile* geofile);
3144         RPC(const RPC& other);
3145         ~RPC();
3146         RPC& operator=(const RPC& other);
3147
3148         string GetName();
3149         Uint GetNGaps();
3150         Uint GetNPartitions();
3151         Uint GetNStrips();
3152         string GetGap(Uint g);
3153         float GetGapGeo(Uint g);
3154         float GetStripGeo(Uint p);
3155     };

```

3133 *Source Code B.5: Description of C++ objects RPC that describe each active detectors used during data taking.*

## 3134 B.4.2 Trolley objects

3135 Trolley objects have been developped to represent physical active trolleys in GIFT++ at the moment  
 3136 of data taking. Thus, there are as many trolley objects created during the analysis than there were  
 3137 active trolleys hosting tested RPCs during a run. Each Trolley hosts the information present in the  
 3138 corresponding INI trolley group, as shown in B.2, and organises it using a similar architecture. In  
 3139 addition to the information hosted in the INI file, these object have a dynamical container of RPC  
 3140 objects, representing the active detectors the active trolley was hosting at the time of data taking.  
 3141 This can been seen from Source Code B.6.

3142 Trolley objects are always contructed thanks to the dimension file information stored into the  
 3143 IniFILE and their ID, using the format Tt. Using the Trolley ID, the constructor calls the methods  
 3144 of IniFILE to initialise the Trolley. Retrieving the information of the RPC IDs via SlotsID, a new  
 3145 RPC is constructed and added to the container RPCs for each character in the ID string. The other  
 3146 constructors are not used but exist in case of need. Finally, some getters have been written to access  
 3147 the different private parameters storing the trolley and detectors information.

```

3148 class Trolley{
3149     private:
3150         Uint           nSlots; //Number of active RPCs in the considered trolley
3151         string        SlotsID; //Active RPC IDs written into a string
3152         vector<RPC*> RPCs;   //List of active RPCs
3153
3154     public:
3155         //Constructors, destructor and operator =
3156         Trolley();
3157         Trolley(string ID, IniFile* geofile);
3158         Trolley(const Trolley& other);
3159         ~Trolley();
3160         Trolley& operator=(const Trolley& other);
3161
3162         //Get GIFTrolley members
3163         Uint    GetNSlots();
3164         string  GetSlotsID();
3165         Uint    GetSlotID(Uint s);
3166
3167         //Manage RPC list
3168         RPC*   GetRPC(Uint r);
3169         void   DeleteRPC(Uint r);
3170
3171         //Methods to get members of RPC objects stored in RPCs
3172         string  GetName(Uint r);
3173         Uint    GetNGaps(Uint r);
3174         Uint    GetNPartitions(Uint r);
3175         Uint    GetNStrips(Uint r);
3176         string  GetGap(Uint r, Uint g);
3177         float   GetGapGeo(Uint r, Uint g);
3178         float   GetStripGeo(Uint r, Uint p);
3179     };

```

*Source Code B.6: Description of C++ objects Trolley that describe each active trolley used during data taking.*

### 3151    B.4.3 Infrastructure object

3152 The `Infrastructure` object has been developped to represent the GIFT++ bunker area dedicated to  
 3153 CMS RPC experiments. With this very specific object, all the information about the CMS RPC  
 3154 setup within GIFT++ at the moment of data taking is stored. It hosts the information present in the  
 3155 corresponding INI general group, as shown in B.1, and organises it using a similar architecture. In  
 3156 addition to the information hosted in the INI file, this object have a dynamical container of `Trolley`  
 3157 objects, representing the active tolleys in GIFT++ area. This can be seen from Source Code B.7.

3158 The `Infrastructure` object is always contructed thanks to the dimension file information stored  
 3159 into the `IniFILE`. Retrieving the information of the trolley IDs via `TrolleysID`, a new `Trolley` is  
 3160 constructed and added to the container `Trolleys` for each character in the ID `string`. By extension,  
 3161 it is easy to understand that the process described in Section B.4.2 for the construction of RPCs  
 3162 takes place when a trolley is constructed. The other constructors are not used but exist in case of  
 3163 need. Finally, some getters have been written to access the different private parameters storing the  
 3164 infrastructure, tolleys and detectors information.

```

3165
class Infrastructure {
    private:
        Uint             nTrolleys;   //Number of active Trolleys in the run
        string          TrolleysID;  //Active trolley IDs written into a string
        vector<Trolley*> Trolleys;  //List of active Trolleys (struct)

    public:
        //Constructors and destructor
        Infrastructure();
        Infrastructure(IniFile* geofile);
        Infrastructure(const Infrastructure& other);
        ~Infrastructure();
        Infrastructure& operator=(const Infrastructure& other);

        //Get Infrastructure members
        Uint  GetNTrolleys();
        string GetTrolleysID();
        Uint   GetTrolleyID(Uint t);

3166
        //Manage Trolleys
        Trolley* GetTrolley(Uint t);
        void     DeleteTrolley(Uint t);

        //Methods to get members of GIFTrolley objects stored in Trolleys
        Uint  GetNSlots(Uint t);
        string GetSlotsID(Uint t);
        Uint   GetSlotID(Uint t, Uint s);
        RPC*  GetRPC(Uint t, Uint r);

        //Methods to get members of RPC objects stored in RPCs
        string GetName(Uint t, Uint r);
        Uint   GetNGaps(Uint t, Uint r);
        Uint   GetNPartitions(Uint t, Uint r);
        Uint   GetNStrips(Uint t, Uint r);
        string GetGap(Uint t, Uint r, Uint g);
        float  GetGapGeo(Uint t, Uint r, Uint g);
        float  GetStripGeo(Uint t, Uint r, Uint p);
    };

```

*Source Code B.7: Description of C++ object Infrastructure that contains the full information about CMS RPC experiment in GIF++.*

## 3168 B.5 Handeling of data

3169 As discussed in Appendix A.4.2, the raw data as a `TTree` architecture where every entry is related to  
 3170 a trigger signal provided by a muon or a random pulse, whether the goal of the data taking was to  
 3171 measure the performance of the detector or the noise/gamma background respectively. Each of these  
 3172 entries, referred also as events, contain a more or less full list of hits in the TDC channels to which  
 3173 the detectors are connected. To this list of hits corresponds a list of time stamps, marking the arrival  
 3174 of the hits within the TDC channel.

3175 The infrastructure of the CMS RPC experiment within `GIF++` being defined, combining the  
 3176 information about the raw data with the information provided by both the mapping/mask file and the  
 3177 dimension file allows to build new physical objects that will help in computing efficiency or rates.

3178    **B.5.1 RPC hits**

3179    The raw data stored in the ROOT file as output of the GIFT++ DAQ, is readout by the analysis tool  
 3180    using the structure `RAWData` presented in Source Code B.9 that differs from the structure presented  
 3181    in Appendix A.4.2 as it is not meant to hold all of the data contained in the ROOT file. In this sense,  
 3182    this structure is in the case of the offline analysis tool not a dynamical object and will only be storing  
 3183    a single event contained in a single entry of the `TTree`.

```
3184
class RPCHit {
    private:
        Uint Channel;      //RPC channel according to mapping (5 digits)
        Uint Trolley;     //0, 1 or 3 (1st digit of the RPC channel)
        Uint Station;     //Slot where is held the RPC in Trolley (2nd digit)
        Uint Strip;       //Physical RPC strip where the hit occurred (last 3
    →   digits)
        Uint Partition;   //Readout partition along eta segmentation
        float TimeStamp; //Time stamp of the arrival in TDC

    public:
        //Constructors, destructor & operator =
        RPCHit();
        RPCHit(Uint channel, float time, Infrastructure* Infra);
        RPCHit(const RPCHit& other);
        ~RPCHit();
        RPCHit& operator=(const RPCHit& other);

        //Get RPCHit members
        Uint GetChannel();
        Uint GetTrolley();
        Uint GetStation();
        Uint GetStrip();
        Uint GetPartition();
        float GetTime();
    };

    typedef vector<RPCHit> HitList;
    typedef struct GIFHitList { HitList rpc[NTROLLEYS][NSLOTS][NPARTITIONS]; }
    →   GIFHitList;

    bool SortHitbyStrip(RPCHit h1, RPCHit h2);
    bool SortHitbyTime(RPCHit h1, RPCHit h2);
}
```

3186    *Source Code B.8: Description of C++ object RPCHit.*

```
3187
struct RAWData{
    int          iEvent;    //Event i
    int          TDCNHits; //Number of hits in event i
    int          QFlag;    //Quality flag list (1 flag digit per TDC)
    vector<Uint> *TDCCh;  //List of channels giving hits per event
    vector<float> *TDCTS;  //List of the corresponding time stamps
};
```

3188    *Source Code B.9: Description of C++ structure RAWData.*

3189    Each member of the structure is then linked to the corresponding branch of the ROOT data tree,  
 3190    as shown in the example of Source Code B.10, and using the method `GetEntry(int i)` of the ROOT  
 3191    class `TTree` will update the state of the members of `RAWData`.

```

3192   TTree* dataTree = (TTree*)dataFile.Get("RAWData");
3193   RAWData data;
3194
3195   dataTree->SetBranchAddress("EventNumber", &data.iEvent);
3196   dataTree->SetBranchAddress("number_of_hits", &data.TDCNHits);
3197   dataTree->SetBranchAddress("Quality_flag", &data.QFlag);
3198   dataTree->SetBranchAddress("TDC_channel", &data.TDCCh);
3199   dataTree->SetBranchAddress("TDC_TimeStamp", &data.TDCTS);

```

3194       *Source Code B.10: Example of link in between RAWData and TTree.*

3195       The data is then analysed entry by entry and to each element of the TDC channel list, a `RPCHit` is  
 3196       constructed by linking each TDC channel to the corresponding RPC channel thanks to the `Mapping`  
 3197       object. The information carried by the RPC channel format allows to easily retrieve the trolley and  
 3198       slot from which the hit was recorded (see section B.3.2). Using these 2 values, the readout partition  
 3199       can be found by knowing the strip channel and comparing it with the number of partitions and strips  
 3200       per partition stored into the `Infrastructure` object.

3201       Thus `RPCHit` objects are then stored into 3D dynamical list called `GIFHitList` (Source Code B.9)  
 3202       where the 3 dimensions refer to the 3 layers of the readout in `GIF++` : in the bunker there are *trolleys*  
 3203       ( $\tau$ ) holding detectors in *slots* ( $s$ ) and each detector readout is divided into 1 or more pseudo-rapidity  
 3204       *partitions* ( $p$ ). Using these 3 information allows to assign an address to each readout partition and  
 3205       this address will point to a specific hit list.

3206

## 3207       **B.5.2 Clusters of hits**

3208       All the hits contained in the ROOT file have been sorted into the different hit lists through the  
 3209       `GIFHitList`. At this point, it is possible to start looking for clusters. A cluster is a group of adjacent  
 3210       strips getting hits within a time window of 25 ns. These strips are then assumed to be part of the same  
 3211       physical avalanche signal generated by a muon passing through the chamber or by the interaction of  
 3212       a gamma stopping into the electrodes of the RPCs.

3213       To keep the cluster information, `RPCCluster` objects have been defined as shown in Source  
 3214       Code B.11. Using the information of each individual `RPCHit` taken out of the hit list, it stores  
 3215       the cluster size (number of adjacent strips composing the cluster), the first and last hit, the center for  
 3216       spatial reconstruction and finally the start and stop time stamps as well as te time spread in between  
 3217       the first and last hit.

```

3218
class RPCCluster{
    private:
        Uint ClusterSize; //Size of cluster #ID
        Uint FirstStrip; //First strip of cluster #ID
        Uint LastStrip; //Last strip of cluster #ID
        float Center; //Center of cluster #ID ((first+last)/2)
        float StartStamp; //Time stamp of the earliest hit of cluster #ID
        float StopStamp; //Time stamp of the latest hit of cluster #ID
        float TimeSpread; //Time difference between earliest and latest hits
                           //of cluster #ID

    public:
        //Constructors, destructor & operator =
        RPCCluster();
        RPCCluster(HitList List, Uint cID, Uint cSize, Uint first, Uint firstID);
        RPCCluster(const RPCCluster& other);
        ~RPCCluster();
        RPCCluster& operator=(const RPCCluster& other);

        //Get Cluster members
        Uint GetID();
        Uint GetSize();
        Uint GetFirstStrip();
        Uint GetLastStrip();
        float GetCenter();
        float GetStart();
        float GetStop();
        float GetSpread();
};

typedef vector<RPCCluster> ClusterList;

//Other functions to build cluster lists out of hit lists
void BuildClusters(HitList &cluster, ClusterList &clusterList);
void Clusterization(HitList &hits, TH1 *hcSize, TH1 *hcMult);

```

*Source Code B.11: Description of C++ object cluster.*

To investigate the hit list of a given detector partition, the function `Clusterization()` defined in `include/Cluster.h` needs the hits in the list to be time sorted. This is achieved by calling function `sort()` of library `<algorithm>` using the comparator `SortHitbyTime(RPCHit h1, RPCHit h2)` defined in `include/RPCHit.h` that returns `true` if the time stamp of hit `h1` is lower than that of `h2`. A first isolation of strips is made only based on time information. All the hits within the 25 ns window are taken separately from the rest. Then, this sub-list of hits is sorted this time by ascending strip number, using this time the comparator `SortHitbyStrip(RPCHit h1, RPCHit h2)`. Finally, the groups of adjacent strips are used to construct `RPCcluster` objects that are then stored in a temporary list of clusters that is at the end of the process used to know how many clusters were reconstructed and to fill their sizes into an histogram that will allows to know the mean size of muon or gamma clusters.

## **3233 B.6 DAQ data Analysis**

All the ingredients to analyse GIF++ data have been defined. This section will focus on the different part of the analysis performed on the data, from determining the type of data the tool is dealing with

3236 to calculating the rate in each detector or reconstructing muon or gamma clusters.

### 3237 B.6.1 Determination of the run type

3238 In GIF++, both the performance of the detectors in detecting muons in an irradiated environment and  
 3239 the gamma background can be independantly measured. These corresponds to different run types  
 3240 and thus, to different TDC settings giving different data to look at.

3241

3242 In the case of performance measurements, the trigger for data taking is provided by the coïncidence  
 3243 of several scintillators when muons from the beam passing through the area are detected. Data  
 3244 is collected in a 600 ns wide window around the arrival of muons in the RPCs. The expected time  
 3245 distribution of hits is shown in Figure B.1a. The muon peak is clearly visible in the center of the  
 3246 distribution and is to be extracted from the gamma background that composes the flat part of the  
 3247 distribution.

3248 On the other hand, gamma background or noise measurements are focussed on the non muon  
 3249 related physics and the trigger needs to be independant from the muons to give a good measurement  
 3250 of the gamma/noise distribution as seen by the detectors. The trigger is then provided by a pulse  
 3251 generator at a frequency of 300 Hz whose pulse is not likely to be on time with a muon. In order  
 3252 to increase the integrated time without increasing the acquisition time too much, the width of the  
 3253 acquisition windows are increased to 10  $\mu$ s. The time distribution of the hits is expected to be flat, as  
 3254 shown by Figure B.1b.

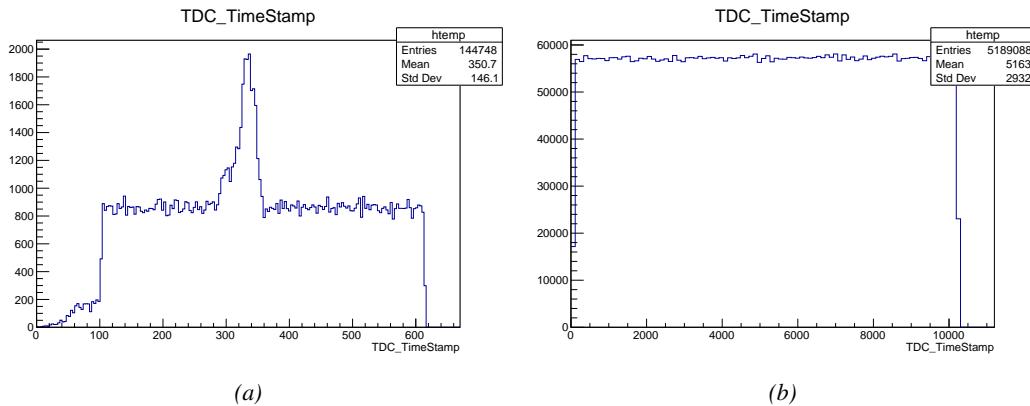


Figure B.1: Example of expected hit time distributions in the cases of efficiency (Figure B.1a) and noise/gamma rate per unit area (Figure B.1b) measurements as extracted from the raw ROOT files. The unit along the x-axis corresponds to ns. The fact that "the" muon peak is not well defined in Figure B.1a is due to the contribution of all the RPCs being tested at the same time that don't necessarily have the same signal arrival time. Each individual peak can have an offset with the ones of other detectors. The inconsistency in the first 100 ns of both time distributions is an artefact of the TDCs and are systematically rejected during the analysis.

3255 The ROOT files include a TTree called RunParameters containing, among other things, the in-  
 3256 formation related to the type of run. The run type can then be accessed as described by Source  
 3257 Code B.12 and the function IsEfficiencyRun() is then used to determine if the run file is an effi-  
 3258 ciency run or, on the contrary, another type of run (noise or gamma measurement).

```

3259     TTree* RunParameters = (TTree*)dataFile.Get("RunParameters");
3260     TString* RunType = new TString();
3261     RunParameters->SetBranchAddress("RunType", &RunType);
3262     RunParameters->GetEntry(0);

```

3261       *Source Code B.12: Access to the run type contained in TTree\* RunParameters.*

3262       Finally, the data files will have a slightly different content whether it was collected before or after  
 3263       October 2017 and the upgrade of the DAQ software that brought a new information into the ROOT  
 3264       output. This is discussed in Appendix A.4.3 and implies that the analysis will differ a little depending  
 3265       on the data format. Indeed, as no information on the data quality is stored, in older data files, the cor-  
 3266       rections for missing events has to be done at the end of the analysis. The information about the type  
 3267       of data format is stored in the variable **bool** `isNewFormat` by checking the list of branches contained  
 3268       in the data tree via the methods `TTree::GetListOfBranches()` and `TCollection::Contains()`.

### 3269       **B.6.2 Beam time window calculation for efficiency runs**

3270       Knowing the run type is important first of all to know the width of the acquisition window to be used  
 3271       for the rate calculation and finally to be able to seek for muons. Indeed, the peak that appears in the  
 3272       time distribution for each detectors is then fitted to extract the most probable time window in which  
 3273       the tool should look for muon hits. The data outside of this time window is then used to evaluate the  
 3274       noise or gamma background the detector was subjected to during the data taking. Computing the  
 3275       position of the peak is done calling the function `SetBeamWindow()` defined in file `src/RPCHit.cc` that  
 3276       loops a first time on the data. The data is first sorted in a 3D array of 1D histograms (`GIFH1Array`, see  
 3277       `include/types.h`). Then the location of the highest bin is determined using `TH1::GetMaximumBin()`  
 3278       and is used to define a window in which a gaussian fit will be applied to compute the peak width.  
 3279       This window is a 80 ns defined by Formula B.1 around the central bin.

$$t_{center}(ns) = \text{bin} \times \text{width}_{\text{bin}}(ns) \quad (\text{B.1a})$$

$$[t_{low}; t_{high}] = [t_{center} - 40; t_{center} + 40] \quad (\text{B.1b})$$

3280       Before the fit is performed, the average number of noise/gamma hits per bin is evaluated using  
 3281       the data outside of the fit window. Excluding the first 100 ns, the average number of hits per bin  
 3282       due to the noise or gamma is defined by Formula B.2 after extracting the amount of hits in the time  
 3283       windows  $[100; t_{low}]$  and  $[t_{high}; 600]$  thanks to the method `TH1::Integral()`. This average number  
 3284       of hits is then subtracted to every bin of the 1D histogram, in order to *clean* it from the noise or  
 3285       gamma contribution as much as possible to improve the fit quality. Bins where  $\langle n_{\text{hits}} \rangle$  is greater  
 3286       than the actual bin content are set to 0.

$$\Delta t_{noise}(ns) = 600 \overbrace{-t_{high} + t_{low}}^{-80ns} - 100 = 420ns \quad (\text{B.2a})$$

$$\langle n_{\text{hits}} \rangle = \text{width}_{\text{bin}}(ns) \times \frac{\sum_{t=100}^{t_{low}} + \sum_{t=t_{high}}^{600}}{\Delta t_{noise}(ns)} \quad (\text{B.2b})$$

3287       Finally, the fit parameters are extracted and saved for each detector in 3D arrays of **float**  
 3288       (`muonPeak`, see `include/types.h`), a first one for the mean arrival time of the muons, `PeakTime`,

3289 and a second one for the width of the peak, `PeakWidth`. The width is defined as  $6\sigma$  of the gaussian  
 3290 fit. The same settings are applied to every partitions of the same detector. To determine which one  
 3291 of the detector's partitions is directly illuminated by the beam, the peak height of each partition is  
 3292 compared and the highest one is then used to define the peak settings.

### 3293    B.6.3 Data loop and histogram filling

3294 3D arrays of histogram are created to store the data and display it on the DQM of G4F++ webDCS  
 3295 for the use of shifters. These histograms, presented in section B.2.1.1, are filled while looping on  
 3296 the data. Before starting the analysis loop, it is necessary to control the entry quality for the new  
 3297 file formats featuring `QFlag`. If the `QFlag` value for this entry shows that 1 TDC or more have a  
 3298 `CORRUPTED` flag, then this event is discarded. The loss of statistics is low enough to be neglected.  
 3299 `QFlag` is controlled using the function `IsCorruptedEvent()` defined in `src/utils.cc`. As explained  
 3300 in Appendix A.4.3, each digit of this integer represents a TDC flag that can be 1 or 2. Each 2 is  
 3301 the sign of a `CORRUPTED` state. Then, the data is accessed entry by entry in the ROOT `TTree` using  
 3302 `RAWData` and each hit in the hit list is assigned to a detector channel and saved in the corresponding  
 3303 histograms. In the first part of the analysis, in which the loop over the ROOT file's content is  
 3304 performed, the different steps are:

3305 **1- RPC channel assignment and control:** a check is done on the RPC channel extracted thanks  
 3306 to the mapping via the method `Mapping::GetLink()`. If the channel is not initialised and is 0, or if  
 3307 the TDC channel was greater than 5127, the hit is discarded. This means there was a problem in the  
 3308 mapping. Often a mapping problem leads to the crash of the offline tool.

3309 **2- Creation of a `RPCHit` object:** to easily get the trolley, slot and partition in which the hit has  
 3310 been assigned, this object is particularly helpful.

3311 **3- General histograms are filled:** the hit is filled into the time distribution and the general hit  
 3312 distribution histograms, and if the arrival time is within the first 100 ns, it is discarded and nothing  
 3313 else happens and the loop proceeds with the next hit in the list.

3314 **4- Multiplicity counter:** the hit multiplicity counter of the corresponding detectors incremented.

3315 **5-a- Efficiency runs - Is the hit within the peak window? :** if the peak is contained in the peak  
 3316 window previously defined in section B.6.2, the hit is filled into the beam hit profile histogram of  
 3317 the corresponding chamber, added into the list of muon hits and increments the counter of *in time*  
 3318 hits. The term *in time* here refers to the hits that are likely to be muons by arriving in the expected  
 3319 time window. If the hit is outside of the peak window, it is filled into the noise profile histogram  
 3320 of the corresponding detector, added into the list of noise/gamma hits and increments the counter of  
 3321 noise/gamma hits.

3322 **5-b- Noise/gamma rate runs - Noise histograms are filled:** the hit is filled into the noise profile  
 3323 histogram of the corresponding detector, added into the list of noise/gamma hits and increments the  
 3324 counter of noise/gamma hits.

3326 After the loop on the hit list of the entry is over, the next step is to clusterize the 3D lists filled  
 3327 in the previous steps. A 3D loop is then started over the active trolley, slot and RPC partitions to  
 3328 access these objects. Each `NoiseHitList` and `MuonHitList`, in case of efficiency run, are clusterized  
 3329 as described in section B.5.2. There corresponding cluster size and multiplicity histograms are filled  
 3330 at the end of the clustering process. Then, the efficiency histogram is filled in case of efficiency run.  
 3331 The selection is simply made by checking whether the RPC detected signals in the peak window  
 3332 during this event. Nevertheless, it is useful to highlight that at this level, it is not possible yet to  
 3333 discriminate in between a muon hit and noise or gamma hit. Thus, `MuonCSize_H`, `MuonCMult_H`  
 3334 and `Efficiency0_H` are subjected to noise and gamma contamination. This contamination will be  
 3335 estimated and corrected at the moment the results will be written into output CSV files. Finally, the  
 3336 loop ends on the filling of the general hit multiplicity histogram.

#### 3337 **B.6.4 Results calculation**

3338 As mentioned in section B.2.1, the analysis of DAQ data provides the user with 3 CSV files and  
 3339 a ROOT file associated to each and every ROOT data file. The fourth CSV file is provided by the  
 3340 extraction of the CEAN main frame data monitored during data taking and will be discussed later.  
 3341 After looping on the data in the previous part of the analysis macro, the output files are created and a  
 3342 3D loop on each RPC readout partitions is started to extract the histograms parameters and compute  
 3343 the final results.

3344

##### 3345 **B.6.4.1 Rate normalisation**

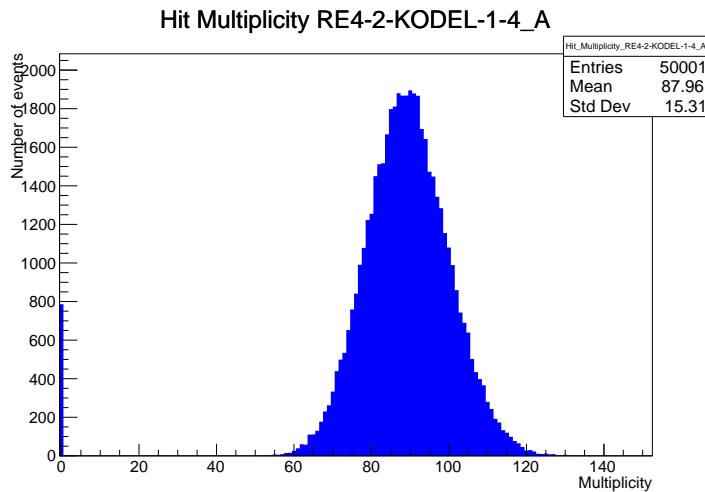


Figure B.2: The effect of the quality flag is explained by presenting the reconstructed hit multiplicity of a data file without `Quality_flag`. The artificial high content of bin 0 is the effect of corrupted data.

3346 To analyse old data format files, not containing any quality flag, it is needed to estimate the amount  
 3347 of corrupted data via a fit as the corrupted data will always fill events with a fake "0 multiplicity".  
 3348 Indeed, as no hits were stored in the DAQ ROOT files, these events artificially contribute to fill  
 3349 the bin corresponding to a null multiplicity, as shown in Figure B.2. In the case the mean of the

3350 hit multiplicity distribution is high, the contribution of the corrupted data can easily be evaluated  
 3351 for later correction by comparing the level of the bin at multiplicity 0 and of a skew fit curve that  
 3352 should indicate a value consistent with 0. A skew fit has been chosen over a Poisson fit as it was  
 3353 giving better results for lower mean multiplicity values. Nevertheless, for low irradiation cases,  
 3354 as explained in Appendix A.4.3, the hit multiplicity distribution mean is, on the contrary, rather  
 3355 small and the probability to record events without hits can't be considered small anymore, leading  
 3356 to a difficult and non-reliable estimation of the corruption. As can be seen in Source Code B.13,  
 3357 conditions have been applied to prevent bad fits and wrong corruption estimation in cases where :

3358     ● The difference in between the data for multiplicity 1 and the corresponding fit value should be  
 3359       lower than 1% of the total amount of data :  $\frac{|n_{m=1} - sk(1)|}{N_{tot}} < 0.01$  where  $n_{m=1}$  is the number  
 3360       of entries with multiplicity 1,  $sk(1)$  the value of the skew fit, as defined by Formula 5.3, for  
 3361       multiplicity 1 and  $N_{tot}$  the total number of entries.

3362     ● The amount of data contained in the multiplicity 0 bin should not exceed 40% :  $\frac{n_{m=0}}{N_{tot}} \leq 0.4$   
 3363       where  $n_{m=0}$  is the number of entries with multiplicity 0. This number has been determined  
 3364       to be the maximum to be able to separate the excess of data due to corruption from the hit  
 3365       multiplicity distribution.

3366     Those 2 conditions need to be fulfilled to estimate the corruption of old data format files. If the  
 3367     fit was successful, the level of corruption is written in `Offline-Corrupted.csv` and the number of  
 3368     corrupted entries, refered as the integer `nEmptyEvent`, is subtracted from the total number of entries  
 3369     when the rate normalisation factor is computed as explicit in Source Code B.13. Note that for new  
 3370     data format files, the number of corrupted entries being set to 0, the definition of `rate_norm` stays  
 3371     valid.

```

3372   if(!isNewFormat){
      TF1* GaussFit = new TF1("gaussfit","[0]*exp(-0.5*((x-[1])/[2])**2)",0,Xmax);
      GaussFit->SetParameter(0,100);
      GaussFit->SetParameter(1,10);
      GaussFit->SetParameter(2,1);
      HitMultiplicity_H.rpc[T][S][p]->Fit(GaussFit,"LIQR","");
      HitMultiplicity_H.rpc[T][S][p]->Fit(GaussFit,"LIQR","");
      TF1* SkewFit = new TF1("skewfit","[0]*exp(-0.5*((x-[1])/[2])**2) / (1 +
→      exp(-[3]*(x-[4])))",0,Xmax);
      SkewFit->SetParameter(0,GaussFit->GetParameter(0));
      SkewFit->SetParameter(1,GaussFit->GetParameter(1));
      SkewFit->SetParameter(2,GaussFit->GetParameter(2));
      SkewFit->SetParameter(3,1);
      SkewFit->SetParameter(4,1);
      HitMultiplicity_H.rpc[T][S][p]->Fit(SkewFit,"LIQR","");
      HitMultiplicity_H.rpc[T][S][p]->Fit(SkewFit,"LIQR","");
      double fitValue = SkewFit->Eval(1,0,0,0);
      double dataValue = (double)HitMultiplicity_H.rpc[T][S][p]->GetBinContent(2);
      double difference = TMath::Abs(dataValue - fitValue);
      double fitTOdataVSentries_ratio = difference / (double)nEntries;
      bool isFitGOOD = fitTOdataVSentries_ratio < 0.01;

3373   double nSinglehit = (double)HitMultiplicity_H.rpc[T][S][p]->GetBinContent(1);
   double lowMultRatio = nSinglehit / (double)nEntries;
   bool isMultLOW = lowMultRatio > 0.4;

   if(isFitGOOD && !isMultLOW){
      nEmptyEvent = HitMultiplicity_H.rpc[T][S][p]->GetBinContent(1);
      nPhysics = (int)SkewFit->Eval(0,0,0,0);
      if(nPhysics < nEmptyEvent)
         nEmptyEvent = nEmptyEvent-nPhysics;
   }
}

double corrupt_ratio = 100.*(double)nEmptyEvent / (double)nEntries;
outputCorrCSV << corrupt_ratio << '\t';

float rate_norm = 0.;
float stripArea = GIFIInfra->GetStripGeo(tr,sl,p);

if(IsEfficiencyRun(RunType)){
   float noiseWindow = BMTDCWINDOW - TIMEREJECT - 2*PeakWidth.rpc[T][S][p];
   rate_norm = (nEntries-nEmptyEvent)*noiseWindow*1e-9*stripArea;
} else
   rate_norm = (nEntries-nEmptyEvent)*RDMNOISEWDW*1e-9*stripArea;

```

*Source Code B.13: Definition of the rate normalisation variable. It takes into account the number of non corrupted entries and the time window used for noise calculation, to estimate the total integrated time, and the strip active area to express the result as rate per unit area.*

#### 3375 B.6.4.2 Rate and activity

3376 At this point, the strip rate histograms, StripNoiseProfile\_H.rpc[T][S][p], only contain an in-  
 3377 formation about the total number of noise or rate hits each channel received during the data taking.  
 3378 As described in Source Code B.14, a loop on the strip channels will be used to normalise the content  
 3379 of the rate distribution histogram for each detector partitions. The initial number of hits recorded for  
 3380 a given bin will be extracted and 2 values will be computed:

- 3381     ● the strip rate, defined as the number of hits recorded in the bin normalised like described in  
 3382               the previous section, using the variable `rate_norm`, and

- 3383     ● the strip activity, defined as the number of hits recorded in the bin normalised to the average  
 3384               number of hits per bin contained in the partition histogram, using the variable `averageNhit`.  
 3385               This value provides an information on the homogeneity of the detector response to the gamma  
 3386               background or of the detector noise. An activity of 1 corresponds to an average response.  
 3387               Above 1, the channel is more active than the average and bellow 1, the channel is less active.

```

int nNoise = StripNoiseProfile_H.rpc[T][S][p]->GetEntries();
float averageNhit = (nNoise>0) ? (float)(nNoise/nStripsPart) : 1.;

for(Uint st = 1; st <= nStripsPart; st++){
    float stripRate =
        StripNoiseProfile_H.rpc[T][S][p]->GetBinContent(st)/rate_norm;
    float stripAct =
        StripNoiseProfile_H.rpc[T][S][p]->GetBinContent(st)/averageNhit;

    StripNoiseProfile_H.rpc[T][S][p]->SetBinContent(st,stripRate);
    StripActivity_H.rpc[T][S][p]->SetBinContent(st,stripAct);
}

```

3389     *Source Code B.14: Description of the loop that allows to set the content of each strip rate and strip activity  
 channel for each detector partition.*

3390     On each detector partitions, which are readout by a single FEE, all the channels are not processed  
 3391       by the same chip. Each chip can give a different noise response and thus, histograms using a chip  
 3392       binning are used to investigate chip related noise behaviours. The average values of the strip rate  
 3393       or activity grouped into a given chip are extracted using the using the function `GetChipBin()` and  
 3394       stored in dedicated histograms as described in Source Codes B.15 and B.16 respectively.

```

3395 float GetChipBin(TH1* H, Uint chip){
    Uint start = 1 + chip*NSTRIPSCHIP;
    int nActive = NSTRIPSCHIP;
    float mean = 0.;

    for(Uint b = start; b <= (chip+1)*NSTRIPSCHIP; b++){
        float value = H->GetBinContent(b);
        mean += value;
        if(value == 0.) nActive--;
    }

    if(nActive != 0) mean /= (float)nActive;
    else mean = 0.;

    return mean;
}

```

3397     *Source Code B.15: Function used to compute the content of a bin for an histogram using chip binning.*

```
3398     for(Uint ch = 0; ch < (nStripsPart/NSTRIPSCHIP); ch++) {
        ChipMeanNoiseProf_H.rpc[T][S][p]-
            SetBinContent(ch+1,GetChipBin(StripNoiseProfile_H.rpc[T][S][p],ch));
        ChipActivity_H.rpc[T][S][p]-
            SetBinContent(ch+1,GetChipBin(StripActivity_H.rpc[T][S][p],ch));
    }
```

**3399** *Source Code B.16: Description of the loop that allows to set the content of each chip rate and chip activity bins for each detector partition knowing the information contained in the corresponding strip distribution histograms.*

The activity variable is used to evaluate the homogeneity of the detector response to background or of the detector noise. The homogeneity  $h_p$  of each detector partition can be evaluated using the formula  $h_p = \exp(-\sigma_p^R / \langle R \rangle_p)$ , where  $\langle R \rangle_p$  is the partition mean rate and  $\sigma_p^R$  is the rate standard deviation calculated over the partition channels. The more homogeneously the rates are distributed and the smaller will  $\sigma_p^R$  be, and the closer to 1 will  $h_p$  get. On the contrary, if the standard deviation of the channel's rates is large,  $h_p$  will rapidly get to 0. This value is saved into histograms as shown in Source Code B.17 and could in the future be used to monitor through time, once extracted, the evolution of every partition homogeneity. This could be of great help to understand the apparition of eventual hot spots due to ageing of the chambers subjected to high radiation levels. The monitored homogeneity information could then be combined with a monitoring of the activity of each individual channel in order to have a finer information. Monitoring tools have been suggested and need to be developed for this purpose.

```

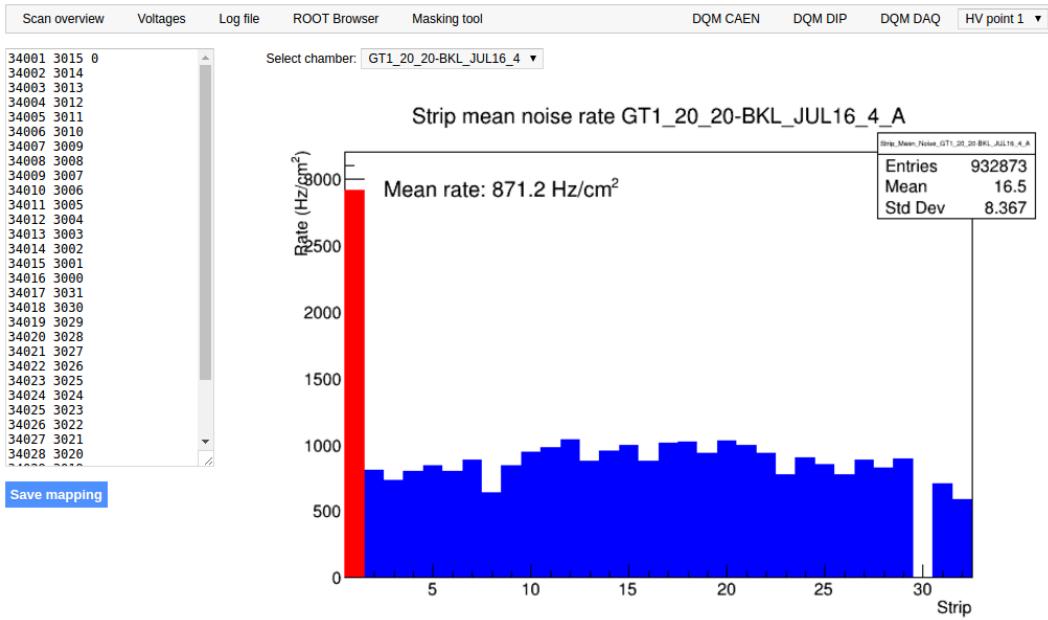
3412   float MeanPartSDev = GetTH1StdDev(StripNoiseProfile_H.rpc[T][S][p]);
float strip_homog = (MeanPartRate==0)
    ? 0.
    : exp(-MeanPartSDev/MeanPartRate);
StripHomogeneity_H.rpc[T][S][p]->Fill("exp -#left (#frac{\sigma_{Strip}
    \rightarrow Rate}}{\mu_{(Strip Rate)}}\#right)",strip_homog);
StripHomogeneity_H.rpc[T][S][p]->GetYaxis()->SetRangeUser(0.,1.);

3413   float ChipStDevMean = GetTH1StdDev(ChipMeanNoiseProf_H.rpc[T][S][p]);
float chip_homog = (MeanPartRate==0)
    ? 0.
    : exp(-ChipStDevMean/MeanPartRate);
ChipHomogeneity_H.rpc[T][S][p]->Fill("exp -#left (#frac{\sigma_{Chip}
    \rightarrow Rate}}{\mu_{(Chip Rate)}}\#right)",chip_homog);
ChipHomogeneity_H.rpc[T][S][p]->GetYaxis()->SetRangeUser(0.,1.);
```

*Source Code B.17: Storage of the homogeneity into dedicated histograms.*

### **3415 B.6.4.3 Strip masking tool**

3416 The offline tool is automatically called at the end of each data taking to analyse the data and offer  
3417 the shifter DQM histograms to control the data quality. After the histograms have been published  
3418 online in the DQM page, the shifter can decide to mask noisy or dead channels that will contribute  
3419 to bias the final rate calculation by editing the mask column of `ChannelsMapping.csv` as can be seen  
3420 in Figure B.3.



*Figure B.3: Display of the masking tool page on the webDCS. The window on the left allows the shifter to edit ChannelsMapping.csv. To mask a channel, it only is needed to set the 3rd field corresponding to the strip to mask to 0. It is not necessary for older mapping file formats to add a 1 for each strip that is not masked as the code is versatile and the default behaviour is to consider missing mask fields as active strips. The effect of the mask is directly visible for noisy channels as the corresponding bin turns red. The global effect of masking strips will be an update of the rate value showed on the histogram that will take into consideration the rejected channels.*

3421 From the code point of view, the function `GetTH1Mean()` is used to retrieve the mean rate par-  
 3422 tition by partition after the rates have been calculated strip by strip and filled into the histograms  
 3423 `StripNoiseProfile_H.rpc[T][S][p]`, as described through Source Code B.18.

3424 Once the mask for each rejected channel has been updated, the shifter can manually run the of-  
 3425 fline tool again to update the DQM plots, now including the masked strips, as well the rate results  
 3426 written in the output CSV file `Offline-Rate.csv`. If not done during the shifts, the strip masking  
 3427 procedure needs to be carefully done by the person in charge of data analysis on the scans that were  
 3428 selected to produce the final results.

```

3429   float GetTH1Mean(TH1* H) {
3430     int nBins = H->GetNbinsX();
3431     int nActive = nBins;
3432     float mean = 0.;
3433
3434     for(int b = 1; b <= nBins; b++) {
3435       float value = H->GetBinContent(b);
3436       mean += value;
3437       if(value == 0.) nActive--;
3438     }
3439
3440     if(nActive != 0) mean /= (float)nActive;
3441     else mean = 0.;
3442
3443     return mean;
3444   }

```

*Source Code B.18:* The function `GetTH1Mean()` is used to return the mean along the y-axis of `TH1` histograms containing rate information. In order to take into account masked strips whose rate is set to 0, the function looks for masked channels and decrement the number of active channels for each null value found.

#### 3432 B.6.4.4 Output CSV files filling

3433 All the histograms have been filled. Parameters will then be extracted from them to compute the  
 3434 final results that will later be used to produce plots. Once the results have been computed, the very  
 3435 last step of the offline macro is to write these values into the corresponding CSV outputs. Aside of  
 3436 the file `Offline-Corrupted.csv`, 2 CSV files are being written by the macro `offlineAnalysis()`,  
 3437 `Offline-Rates.csv` and `Offline-L0-EffCl.csv` that respectively contain information about noise  
 3438 or gamma rates, cluster size and multiplicity, and about level 0 reconstruction of the detector effi-  
 3439 ciency, muon cluster size and multiplicity. Details on the computation and file writing are respec-  
 3440 tively given in Sources Codes B.19 and B.20.

3441 **Noise/gamma background variables** are computed and written in the output file for each detector  
 3442 partitions. A detector average of the hit and cluster rate is also provided, as shown through Sources  
 3443 Code B.19. The variables that are written for each partition are:

- 3444 • The mean partition hit rate per unit area, `MeanPartRate`, that is extracted from the histogram  
   3445   `StripNoiseProfile_H` as the mean value along the y-axis, as described in section B.6.4.3. No  
   3446   error is recorded for the hit rate as this is considered a single measurement. No statistical error  
   3447   can be associated to it and the systematics are unknown.
- 3448 • The mean cluster size, `cSizePart`, is extracted from the histogram `NoiseCSize_H` and it's  
   3449   statistical error, `cSizePartErr`, is taken to be  $2\sigma$  of the total distribution.
- 3450 • The mean cluster multiplicity per trigger, `cMultPart`, is extracted from the histogram `NoiseCMult_H`  
   3451   and it's statistical error, `cMultPartErr`, is taken to be  $2\sigma$  of the total distribution. It is impor-  
   3452   tant to point to the fact that this variable gives an information that is dependent on the buffer  
   3453   window width used for each trigger for the calculation.
- 3454 • The mean cluster rate per unit area, `ClustPartRate`, is defined as the mean hit rate normalised

3455 to the mean cluster size and it's statistical error, `ClustPartRateErr`, is then obtained using the  
 3456 relative statistical error on the mean cluster size.

```

for (UInt tr = 0; tr < GIFInfra->GetNTrolleys(); tr++) {
  UInt T = GIFInfra->GetTrolleyID(tr);

  for (UInt sl = 0; sl < GIFInfra->GetNSlots(tr); sl++) {
    UInt S = GIFInfra->GetSlotID(tr,sl) - 1;

    float MeanNoiseRate = 0.;
    float ClusterRate = 0.;
    float ClusterSDev = 0.;

    for (UInt p = 0; p < GIFInfra->GetNPartitions(tr,sl); p++) {
      float MeanPartRate = GetTH1Mean(StripNoiseProfile_H.rpc[T][S][p]);
      float cSizePart = NoiseCSIZE_H.rpc[T][S][p]->GetMean();
      float cSizePartErr = (NoiseCSIZE_H.rpc[T][S][p]->GetEntries()==0)
        ? 0.
        : 2*NoiseCSIZE_H.rpc[T][S][p]->GetStdDev() /
          sqrt(NoiseCSIZE_H.rpc[T][S][p]->GetEntries());
      float cMultPart = NoiseCMult_H.rpc[T][S][p]->GetMean();
      float cMultPartErr = (NoiseCMult_H.rpc[T][S][p]->GetEntries()==0)
        ? 0.
        : 2*NoiseCMult_H.rpc[T][S][p]->GetStdDev() /
          sqrt(NoiseCMult_H.rpc[T][S][p]->GetEntries());
      float ClustPartRate = (cSizePart==0) ? 0.
        : MeanPartRate/cSizePart;
      float ClustPartRateErr = (cSizePart==0) ? 0.
        : ClustPartRate * cSizePartErr/cSizePart;

      outputRateCSV << MeanPartRate << '\t'
        << cSizePart << '\t' << cSizePartErr << '\t'
        << cMultPart << '\t' << cMultPartErr << '\t'
        << ClustPartRate << '\t' << ClustPartRateErr << '\t';

      RPCarea += stripArea * nStripsPart;
      MeanNoiseRate += MeanPartRate * stripArea * nStripsPart;
      ClusterRate += ClustPartRate * stripArea * nStripsPart;
      ClusterSDev += (cSizePart==0)
        ? 0.
        : ClusterRate*cSizePartErr/cSizePart;
    }

    MeanNoiseRate /= RPCarea;
    ClusterRate /= RPCarea;
    ClusterSDev /= RPCarea;

    outputRateCSV << MeanNoiseRate << '\t'
      << ClusterRate << '\t' << ClusterSDev << '\t';
  }
}

```

3458 *Source Code B.19: Description of rate result calculation and writing into the CSV output Offline-Rate.csv. Are saved into the file for each detector, the mean partition rate, cluster size and cluster mutiplicity, along with their errors, for each partition and as well as a detector average.*

3459 **Muon performance variables** are computed and written in the output file for each detector parti-  
 3460 tions as shown through Sources Code B.20. The variables that are written for each partition are:

- 3461     ● The muon efficiency, `eff`, extracted from the histogram `Efficiency0_H`. It is reminded that  
3462       this offline tool doesn't include any tracking algorithm to identify muons from the beam and  
3463       only relies on the hits arriving in the time window corresponding to the beam time. The con-  
3464       tent of the efficiency histogram is thus biased by the noise/gamma background contribution  
3465       into this window and is thus corrected by estimating the muon data content in the peak re-  
3466       gion knowing the noise/gamma content in the rate calculation region. Both time windows  
3467       being different, the choice was made to normalise the noise/gamma background calculation  
3468       window to it's equivalent beam window in order to have comparable values using the variable  
3469       `windowRatio`. Finally, to estimate the data ratio in the peak region, the variable `DataRatio`  
3470       is defined as the ratio in between the estimated mean cluster multiplicity of the muons in the  
3471       peak region, `MuonCM`, and of the total mean cluster multiplicity in the peak region, `PeakCM`.  
3472       `MuonCM` is itself defined as the difference in between the total mean cluster multiplicity in the  
3473       peak region and the normalised mean noise/gamma cluster multiplicity calculated outside of  
3474       the peak region. The statistical error related to the efficiency, `eff_err`, is computed using a  
3475       binomial distribution, as the efficiency measure the probability of "success" and "failure" to  
3476       detect muons.
- 3477     ● The mean muon cluster size, `MuonCS`, is calculated using the total mean cluster size and multi-  
3478       plicity in the peak region, respectively extracted from histograms `MuonCSize_H` and `MuonCMult_H`,  
3479       the noise/gamma background mean cluster size and normalised multiplicity, extracted from  
3480       `NoiseCSize_H` and `NoiseCMult_H`, and of the estimated muon cluster multiplicity `MuonCM` pre-  
3481       viously explicated. The associated statistical error, `MuonCM_err`, is calculated using the propa-  
3482       gation of errors of the mentioned variables.
- 3483     ● The mean muon cluster multiplicity in the peak region, `MuonCM`, explicated above whose sta-  
3484       tistical error, `MuonCM_err`, is the sum of statistical error associated to the total mean clus-  
3485       ter multiplicity in the peak reagion, `PeakCM_err`, and of the mean noise/gamma cluster size,  
3486       `NoiseCM_err`.

3487       In addition to these 2 CSV files, the histograms are saved in ROOT file `Scan00XXXX_HVY_Offline.root`  
3488       as explained in section B.2.1.1.

3489

```

for (UInt tr = 0; tr < GIFInfra->GetNTrolleys(); tr++) {
    UInt T = GIFInfra->GetTrolleyID(tr);
    for (UInt sl = 0; sl < GIFInfra->GetNSlots(tr); sl++) {
        UInt S = GIFInfra->GetSlotID(tr,sl) - 1;
        for (UInt p = 0; p < GIFInfra->GetNPartitions(tr,sl); p++) {
            float noiseWindow =
                BMTDCWINDOW - TIMEREJECT - 2*PeakWidth.rpc[T][S][p];
            float peakWindow = 2*PeakWidth.rpc[T][S][p];
            float windowRatio = peakWindow/noiseWindow;

            float PeakCM = MuonCMult_H.rpc[T][S][p]->GetMean();
            float PeakCS = MuonCSize_H.rpc[T][S][p]->GetMean();
            float NoiseCM = NoiseCMult_H.rpc[T][S][p]->GetMean() *windowRatio;
            float NoiseCS = NoiseCSize_H.rpc[T][S][p]->GetMean();
            float MuonCM = (PeakCM<NoiseCM) ? 0. : PeakCM-NoiseCM;
            float MuonCS = (MuonCM==0 || PeakCM*PeakCS<NoiseCM*NoiseCS)
                ? 0.
                : (PeakCM*PeakCS-NoiseCM*NoiseCS) / MuonCM;
            float PeakCM_err = (MuonCMult_H.rpc[T][S][p]->GetEntries()==0.)
                ? 0.
                : 2*MuonCMult_H.rpc[T][S][p]->GetStdDev() /
                    sqrt(MuonCMult_H.rpc[T][S][p]->GetEntries());
            float PeakCS_err = (MuonCSize_H.rpc[T][S][p]->GetEntries()==0.)
                ? 0.
                : 2*MuonCSize_H.rpc[T][S][p]->GetStdDev() /
                    sqrt(MuonCSize_H.rpc[T][S][p]->GetEntries());
            float NoiseCM_err = (NoiseCMult_H.rpc[T][S][p]->GetEntries()==0.)
                ? 0.
                : windowRatio*2*NoiseCMult_H.rpc[T][S][p]->GetStdDev() /
                    sqrt(NoiseCMult_H.rpc[T][S][p]->GetEntries());
            float NoiseCS_err = (NoiseCSize_H.rpc[T][S][p]->GetEntries()==0.)
                ? 0.
                : 2*NoiseCSize_H.rpc[T][S][p]->GetStdDev() /
                    sqrt(NoiseCSize_H.rpc[T][S][p]->GetEntries());
            float MuonCM_err = (MuonCM==0) ? 0. : PeakCM_err+NoiseCM_err;
            float MuonCS_err = (MuonCS==0 || MuonCM==0) ? 0.
                : (PeakCS*PeakCM_err + PeakCM*PeakCS_err +
                    NoiseCS*NoiseCM_err + NoiseCM*NoiseCS_err +
                    MuonCS*MuonCM_err) / MuonCM;

            float DataRatio = MuonCM/PeakCM;
            float DataRatio_err = (MuonCM==0) ? 0.
                : DataRatio*(MuonCM_err/MuonCM + PeakCM_err/PeakCM);
            float eff = DataRatio*Efficiency0_H.rpc[T][S][p]->GetMean();
            float eff_err = DataRatio*2*Efficiency0_H.rpc[T][S][p]->GetStdDev() /
                sqrt(Efficiency0_H.rpc[T][S][p]->GetEntries()) +
                Efficiency0_H.rpc[T][S][p]->GetMean()*DataRatio_err;

            outputEffCSV << eff << '\t' << eff_err << '\t'
                << MuonCS << '\t' << MuonCS_err << '\t'
                << MuonCM << '\t' << MuonCM_err << '\t';
        }
    }
}

```

3490

*Source Code B.20: Description of efficiency result calculation and writing into the CSV output Offline-L0-EffCl.csv. Are saved into the file for each detector, the efficiency, corrected taking into account the background in the peak window of the time profile, muon cluster size and muon cluster multiplicity, along with their errors, for each partition and as well as a detector average.*

3491

## 3492 B.7 Current data Analysis

3493 Detectors under test at GIF++ are connected both to a CAEN HV power supply and to a CAEN  
3494 ADC that reads the currents inside of the RPC gaps bypassing the supply cable. During data tak-  
3495 ing, the webDCS records into a ROOT file called `Scan00XXXX_HVY_CAEN.root` histograms with the  
3496 monitored parameters of both CAEN devices. Are recorded for each RPC channels (in most cases,  
3497 a channel corresponds to an RPC gap):

- 3498 • the effective voltage,  $HV_{eff}$ , set by the webDCS using the PT correction on the CAEN power  
3499 supply,
- 3500 • the applied voltage,  $HV_{app}$ , monitored by the CAEN power supply, and the statistical error  
3501 related to the variations of this value through time to follow the variation of the environmental  
3502 parameters defined as the RMS of the histogram divided by the square root of the number of  
3503 recorded points,
- 3504 • the monitored current,  $I_{mon}$ , monitored by the CAEN power supply, and the statistical error  
3505 related to the variations of this value through time to follow the variation of the environmental  
3506 parameters defined as the RMS of the histogram divided by the square root of the number of  
3507 recorded points,
- 3508 • the corresponding current density,  $J_{mon}$ , defined as the monitored current per unit area,  
3509  $J_{mon} = I_{mon}/A$ , where  $A$  is the active area of the corresponding gap,
- 3510 • the ADC current,  $I_{ADC}$ , recorded through the CAEN ADC module that monitors the dark  
3511 current in the gap itself. First of all, the resolution of such a module is better than that of  
3512 CAEN power supplies and moreover, the current is not read-out through the HV supply line  
3513 but directly at the chamber level giving the real current inside of the detector. The statistical  
3514 error is defined as the RMS of the histogram distribution divided by the square root of the  
3515 number of recorded points.

3516 Once extracted through a loop over the element of GIF++ infrastructure via the C++ macro  
3517 `GetCurrent()`, these parameters, organised in 9 columns per detector HV supply line, are written in  
3518 the output CSV file `Offline-Current.csv`. The macro can be found in the file `Current.cc`.

## References

- 3520 [1] T. Massam et al. “Experimental observation of antideuteron production”. In: *Il Nuovo Cimento A* 63 (1965), pp. 10–14.
- 3521
- 3522 [2] UA1 Collaboration. “Experimental observation of isolated large transverse energy electrons with associated missing energy at  $s = 540 \text{ GeV}$ ”. In: *Physics Letters B* 122 (1983), pp. 103–116.
- 3523
- 3524
- 3525 [3] UA2 Collaboration. “Observation of single isolated electrons of high transverse momentum in events with missing transverse energy at the CERN pp collider”. In: *Physics Letters B* 122 (1983), pp. 476–485.
- 3526
- 3527
- 3528 [4] UA1 Collaboration. “Experimental observation of lepton pairs of invariant mass around  $95 \text{ GeV}/c^2$  at the CERN SPS collider”. In: *Physics Letters B* 126 (1983), pp. 398–410.
- 3529
- 3530 [5] UA2 Collaboration. “Evidence for  $Z_0 \rightarrow e^+e^-$  at the CERN pp collider”. In: *Physics Letters B* 129 (1983), pp. 130–140.
- 3531
- 3532 [6] ALEPH Collaboration. “Determination of the number of light neutrino species”. In: *Physics Letters B* 231 (1989), pp. 519–529.
- 3533
- 3534 [7] CERN, ed. (1985).
- 3535 [8] CERN, ed. (1986).
- 3536 [9] CERN, ed. (1994).
- 3537 [10] CERN, ed. (1998).
- 3538 [11] CERN, ed. (1999).
- 3539 [12] CERN. Geneva. LHC Experiments Committee. *Letter of Intent for A Large Ion Collider Experiment [ALICE]*, note = CERN-LHCC-93-016. Tech. rep. ALICE Collaboration, 1993.
- 3540
- 3541 [13] CERN. Geneva. LHC Experiments Committee. *ATLAS : technical proposal for a general-purpose pp experiment at the Large Hadron Collider at CERN*, note = CERN-LHCC-94-43. Tech. rep. ATLAS Collaboration, 1994.
- 3542
- 3543
- 3544 [14] CERN. Geneva. LHC Experiments Committee. *CMS : letter of intent by the CMS Collaboration for a general purpose detector at LHC*, note = CERN-LHCC-92-003. Tech. rep. CMS Collaboration, 1992.
- 3545
- 3546
- 3547 [15] CERN. Geneva. LHC Experiments Committee. *LHCb : letter of intent*. Tech. rep. CERN-LHCC-95-5. LHCb Collaboration, 1995.
- 3548
- 3549 [16] L. Evans and P. Bryant. “LHC Machine”. In: *JINST* 3 (2008). S08001.
- 3550 [17] CMS Collaboration ATLAS Collaboration. “Combined Measurement of the Higgs Boson Mass in  $pp$  Collisions at  $\sqrt{s} = 7$  and  $8 \text{ TeV}$  with the ATLAS and CMS Experiments”. In: *Physical Review Letters* 114 (2015). 191803.
- 3551
- 3552
- 3553 [18] LHCb Collaboration. “Observation of  $J/\psi p$  Resonances Consistent with Pentaquark States in  $\Lambda_b^0 \rightarrow J/\psi K^- p$  Decays”. In: *Physical Review Letters* 115 (2015). 072001.
- 3554

- 3555 [19] LHCb Collaboration. “Observation of  $J/\psi\phi$  Structures Consistent with Exotic States from  
3556 Amplitude Analysis of  $B^+ \rightarrow J/\psi\phi K^+$  Decays”. In: *Physical Review Letters* 118 (2017).  
3557 022003.
- 3558 [20] CERN. Geneva. *High-Luminosity Large Hadron Collider (HL-LHC) Technical Design Report V. 0.1*. Tech. rep. CERN-2017-007-M. 2017.
- 3560 [21] CERN. Geneva. LHC Experiments Committee. *The CMS muon project : Technical Design  
3561 Report*. Tech. rep. CERN-LHCC-97-032. CMS Collaboration, 1997.
- 3562 [22] CERN. Geneva. LHC Experiments Committee. *CMS, the Compact Muon Solenoid : technical  
3563 proposal*. Tech. rep. CERN-2015-005. 2015.
- 3564 [23] CERN. Geneva. LHC Experiments Committee. *The Phase-2 Upgrade of the CMS Muon  
3565 Detectors*. Tech. rep. CERN-LHCC-2017-012, CMS-TDR-016. CMS Collaboration, 2017.
- 3566 [24] CERN. Geneva. LHC Experiments Committee. *High-Luminosity Large Hadron Collider  
3567 (HL-LHC) Preliminary Design Report*. Tech. rep. CERN-LHCC-94-38. CMS Collaboration,  
3568 1994.
- 3569 [25] CERN. Geneva. LHC Experiments Committee. *The Phase-2 Upgrade of the CMS Level-1  
3570 Trigger - Interim Report to the LHCC*. Tech. rep. CERN-LHCC-2017-013, CMS-TDR-017.  
3571 CMS Collaboration, 2017.
- 3572 [26] CERN. Geneva. LHC Experiments Committee. *Technical Proposal for the Phase-II Upgrade  
3573 of the CMS Detector*. Tech. rep. CERN-LHCC-2015-010, CMS-TDR-15-02. CMS Collabora-  
3574 tion, 2015.
- 3575 [27] A. Gelmi. *CMS iRPC at HL-LHC: background study*. 2018. URL: [https://indico.cern.ch/event/732794/contributions/3021836/attachments/1657792/2654574/iRPC\\_bkg\\_study\\_Upgrade29\\_05\\_18.pdf](https://indico.cern.ch/event/732794/contributions/3021836/attachments/1657792/2654574/iRPC_bkg_study_Upgrade29_05_18.pdf).
- 3576 [28] F.Sauli. “GEM: A new concept for electron amplification in gas detectors”. In: *Nucl. Instr.  
3577 Meth. Phys. Res.* 386 (1997), pp. 531–534.
- 3578 [29] CERN. Geneva. LHC Experiments Committee. *CMS Technical Design Report for the Muon  
3579 Endcap GEM Upgrade*. Tech. rep. CERN-LHCC-2015-012, CMS-TDR-013. CMS Collabora-  
3580 tion, 2015.
- 3581 [30] The CMS collaboration. “The performance of the CMS muon detector in proton-proton col-  
3582 lisions at  $\sqrt{s} = 7$  TeV at the LHC”. In: *JINST* 8 (2013). P11002.
- 3583 [31] P.Bortignon. “Design and performance of the upgrade of the CMS L1 muon trigger”. In:  
3584 *Nucl. Instr. Meth. Phys. Res.* 824 (2016), pp. 256–257.
- 3585 [32] The European Parliament and the Council of the European Union. “Regulation (EU) No  
3586 517/2014 of 16 April 2014 on fluorinated greenhouse gases and repealing Regulation (EC)  
3587 No 842/2006”. In: *Official Journal of the European Union* 150 (2014), pp. 195–230.
- 3588 [33] R. Santonico and R. Cardarelli. “Development of resistive plate counters”. In: *Nucl. Instr.  
3589 Meth. Phys. Res.* 187 (1981), pp. 377–380.
- 3590 [34] Yu.N. Pestov and G.V. Fedotovich. *A picosecond time-of-flight spectrometer for the VEPP-2M  
3591 based on local-discharge spark counter*. Tech. rep. SLAC-TRANS-0184. SLAC, 1978.
- 3592 [35] W.W. Ash, ed. *Spark Counter With A Localized Discharge*. Vol. SLAC-R-250. 1982, pp. 127–  
3593 131.
- 3594 [36] I. Crotty et al. “The non-spark mode and high rate operation of resistive parallel plate cham-  
3595 bers”. In: *NIMA* 337 (1993), pp. 370–381.

---

## BIBLIOGRAPHY

---

- [3598] [37] I. Crotty et al. “Further studies of avalanche mode operation of resistive parallel plate chambers”. In: *NIMA* 346 (1994), pp. 107–113.
- [3600] [38] R. Cardarelli et al. “Avalanche and streamer mode operation of resistive plate chambers”. In: *NIMA* 382 (1996), pp. 470–474.
- [3602] [39] R. Cardarelli et al. “Performance of a resistive plate chamber operating with pure  $CF_3Br$ ”. In: *NIMA* 333 (1993), pp. 399–403.
- [3604] [40] M. Abbrescia et al. “Performance of a Resistive Plate Chamber operated in avalanche mode under  $^{137}Cs$  irradiation”. In: *NIMA* 392 (1997), pp. 155–160.
- [3606] [41] M. Abbrescia et al. “Properties of C2H2F4-based gas mixture for avalanche mode operation of resistive plate chambers”. In: *NIMA* 398 (1997), pp. 173–179.
- [3608] [42] P. Camarri et al. “Streamer suppression with SF6 in RPCs operated in avalanche mode”. In: *NIMA* 414 (1998), pp. 317–324.
- [3610] [43] E. Cerron Zeballos et al. “Effect of adding SF6 to the gas mixture in a multigap resistive plate chamber”. In: *NIMA* 419 (1998), pp. 475–478.
- [3612] [44] E. Cerron Zeballos et al. “A new type of resistive plate chamber: The multigap RPC”. In: *NIMA* 374 (1996), pp. 132–135.
- [3614] [45] M.C.S. Williams. “The development of the multigap resistive plate chamber”. In: *Nucl. Phys. B* 61 (1998), pp. 250–257.
- [3616] [46] H. Czyrkowski et al. “New developments on resistive plate chambers for high rate operation”. In: *NIMA* 419 (1998), pp. 490–496.
- [3618] [47] CERN. Geneva. LHC Experiments Committee. *ATLAS muon spectrometer: Technical design report*. Tech. rep. CERN-LHCC-97-22. ATLAS Collaboration, 1997.
- [3620] [48] CERN. Geneva. LHC Experiments Committee. *ALICE Time-Of-Flight system (TOF) : Technical Design Report*. Tech. rep. CERN-LHCC-2000-012. ALICE Collaboration, 2000.
- [3622] [49] The CALICE collaboration. “First results of the CALICE SDHCAL technological prototype”. In: *JINST* 11 (2016).
- [3624] [50] PoS, ed. *Density Imaging of Volcanoes with Atmospheric Muons using GRPCs*. International Europhysics Conference on High Energy Physics - HEP 2011. 2011.
- [3626] [51] C. Lippmann. “Detector Physics of Resistive Plate Chambers”. PhD thesis. Johann Wolfgang Goethe-Universität, 2003.
- [3628] [52] W. Riegler. “Induced signals in resistive plate chambers”. In: *NIMA* 491 (2002), pp. 258–271.
- [3629] [53] M. Abbrescia et al. “Effect of the linseed oil surface treatment on the performance of resistive plate chambers”. In: *NIMA* 394 (1997), pp. 13–20.
- [3631] [54] G.Battistoni et al. “Sensitivity of streamer mode to single ionization electrons”. In: *NIMA* 235 (1985), pp. 91–97.
- [3633] [55] M. Abbrescia et al. “Cosmic ray tests of double-gap resistive plate chambers for the CMS experiment”. In: *NIMA* 550 (2005), pp. 116–126.
- [3635] [56] JINST, ed. *Performance of the Resistive Plate Chambers in the CMS experiment*. The 9<sup>th</sup> International Conference on Positioin Sensitive Detectors. 2012.
- [3637] [57] PoS, ed. *The CMS RPC detector performance during Run-II data taking*. The European Physical Society Conference on High Energy Physics (EPS-HEP2017). 2018.
- [3639] [58] Honeywell International Inc. *Solstice(R) ze Refrigerant (HFO-1234ze): The Environmental Alternative to Traditional Refrigerants*. Tech. rep. FPR-003/2015-01. 2015.

- 3641 [59] E. Cerron Zeballos et al. “A comparison of the wide gap and narrow gap resistive plate  
3642 chamber”. In: *NIMA* 373 (1996), pp. 35–42.
- 3643 [60] ALICE Collaboration. “A study of the multigap RPC at the gamma irradiation facility at  
3644 CERN”. In: *NIMA* 490 (2002), pp. 58–70.
- 3645 [61] B. Bonner et al. “A multigap resistive plate chamber prototype for time-of-flight for the STAR  
3646 experiment at RHIC”. In: *NIMA* 478 (2002), pp. 176–179.
- 3647 [62] S. Yang et al. “Test of high time resolution MRPC with different readout modes for the  
3648 BESIII upgrade”. In: *NIMA* 763 (2014), pp. 190–196.
- 3649 [63] A. Akindinovg et al. “RPC with low-resistive phosphate glass electrodes as a candidate for  
3650 the CBM TOF”. In: *NIMA* 572 (2007), pp. 676–681.
- 3651 [64] JINST, ed. *Development of the MRPC for the TOF system of the MultiPurpose Detector.*  
3652 RPC2016: XII Workshop on Resistive Plate Chambers and Related Detectors. 2016.
- 3653 [65] M.C.S. Williams. “Particle identification using time of flight”. In: *Journal of Physics G* 39  
3654 (2012).
- 3655 [66] A. Alici et al. “Aging and rate effects of the Multigap RPC studied at the Gamma Irradiation  
3656 Facility at CERN”. In: *NIMA* 579 (2007), pp. 979–988.
- 3657 [67] M. Abbrescia et al. “The simulation of resistive plate chambers in avalanche mode: charge  
3658 spectra and efficiency”. In: *NIMA* 431 (1999), pp. 413–427.
- 3659 [68] M. Abbrescia et al. “Study of long-term performance of CMS RPC under irradiation at the  
3660 CERN GIF”. In: *NIMA* 533 (2004), pp. 102–106.
- 3661 [69] H.C. Kim et al. “Quantitative aging study with intense irradiation tests for the CMS forward  
3662 RPCs”. In: *NIMA* 602 (2009), pp. 771–774.
- 3663 [70] S. Agosteo et al. “A facility for the test of large-area muon chambers at high rates”. In: *NIMA*  
3664 452 (2000), pp. 94–104.
- 3665 [71] PoS, ed. *CERN GIF ++ : A new irradiation facility to test large-area particle detectors for*  
3666 *the high-luminosity LHC program*. Vol. TIPP2014. 2014, pp. 102–109.
- 3667 [72] A. Fagot. *GIF++ DAQ v4.0*. 2017. URL: [https://github.com/afagot/GIF\\_DAQ](https://github.com/afagot/GIF_DAQ).
- 3668 [73] CAEN. *Mod. V1190-VX1190 A/B, 128/64 Ch Multihit TDC*. 14th ed. 2016.
- 3669 [74] CAEN. *Mod. V1718 VME USB Bridge*. 9th ed. 2009.
- 3670 [75] W-Ie-Ne-R. *VME 6021-23 VXI*. 5th ed. 2016.
- 3671 [76] Wikipedia. *INI file*. 2017. URL: [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/INI\\_file](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/INI_file).
- 3672 [77] S. Carrillo A. Fagot. *GIF++ Offline Analysis v6*. 2017. URL: [https://github.com/afagot/GIF\\_OfflineAnalysis](https://github.com/afagot/GIF_OfflineAnalysis).